LIVING LANGUAGE®



FARSI

A COMPLETE COURSE FOR BEGINNERS

Learn to speak, understand, read, and write Farsi with confidence

LIVING LANGUAGE

FARSI A COMPLETE COURSE FOR BEGINNERS

LIVING LANGUAGE®

Living Language® presents a simple and effective introducion to Farsi, providing you with everything you need to speak, understand, read, and write Farsi. You don't need any background in the language—each new concept is explained clearly with plenty of examples, making it ideal for beginners or anyone who wants a thorough review.

READ – Natural dialogues, clear grammar notes, essential vocabulary, and key phrases

LISTEN – Two sets of recordings on six audio CDs for use with the book or on the go

PRACTICE – Plenty of exercises, both written and recorded

EXPLORE – Real-life discovery activities, internet resources, notes on culture, cuisine, history, and more

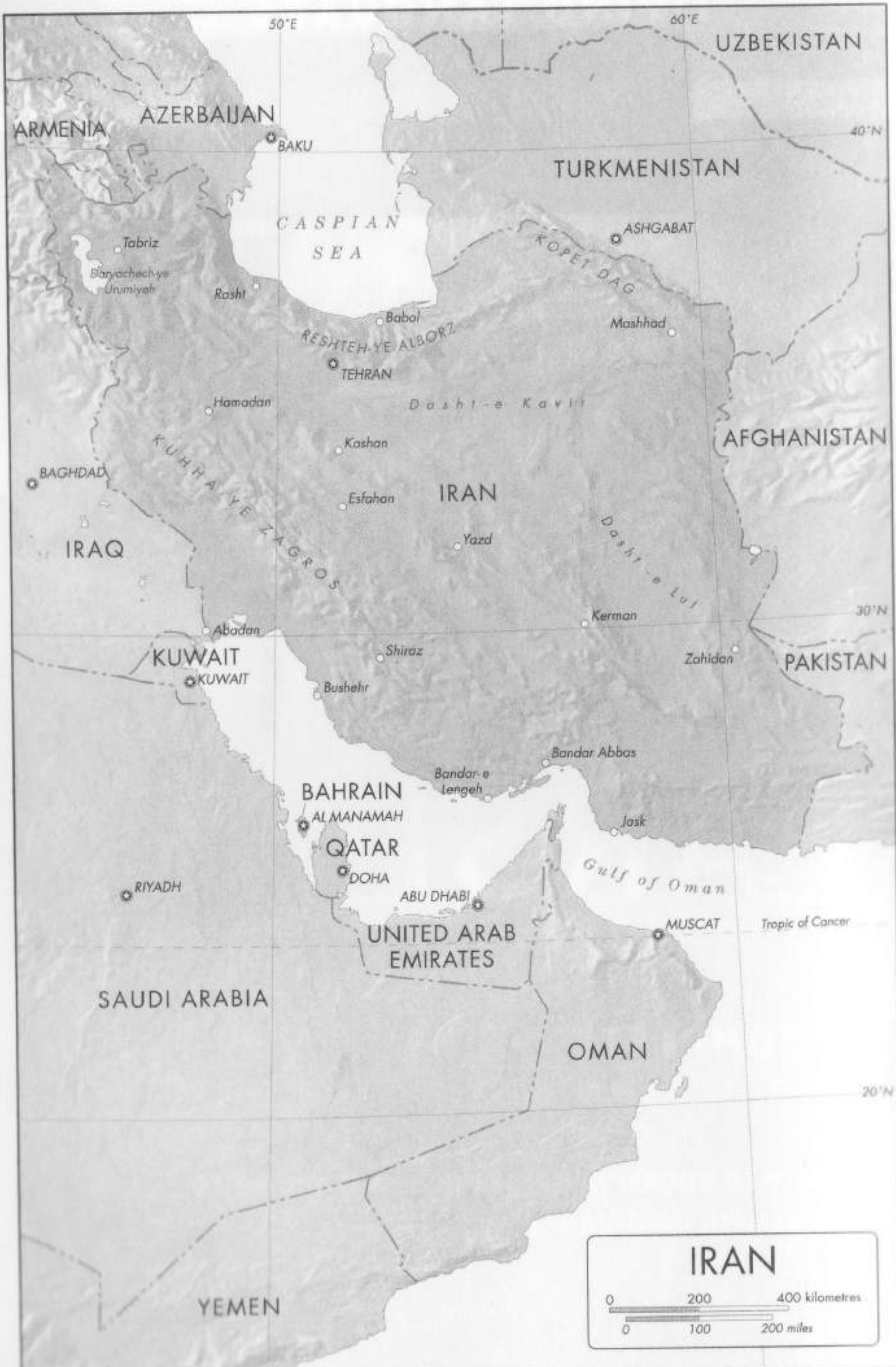
EXPAND – A useful guide to Farsi pronunciation and script and an extensive two-way glossary

Why Choose Living Language®?

- The Living Language® method is proven and simple.
- There are no phony gimmicks or fad techniques.
- Millions have learned a new language with Living Language® since 1946.

Design by Chie Ushio
Photo © Arpad Benedek/iStockphoto
Living Language, A Random House Company, New York, New York

www.livinglanguage.com


50°E
60°E
UZBEKISTAN
AZERBAIJAN
ARMENIA
BAKU
40°N
TURKMENISTAN
CASPIAN
SEA
ASHGABAT
KOPET DAG
Tabriz
Daryachech-ye
Urumiyeh
Rasht
Babol
RESHTEH-YE ALBORZ
Mashhad
TEHRAN
Hamadan
Dasht-e Kavir
Kashan
AFGHANISTAN
BAGHDAD
KUHHA-YE ZAGROS
Esfahan
IRAN
IRAQ
Yazd
Dasht-e Lut
30°N
Kerman
Abadan
KUWAIT
KUWAIT
Shiraz
Zahidan
PAKISTAN
Bushehr
Bandar Abbas
Bandar-e
Lengeh
BAHRAIN
AL MANAMAH
Jask
QATAR
Gulf of Oman
DOHA
RIYADH
ABU DHABI
MUSCAT
Tropic of Cancer
UNITED ARAB
EMIRATES
SAUDI ARABIA
OMAN
20°N
IRAN
0
200
400 kilometres
0
100
200 miles
YEMEN

FARSI

A COMPLETE COURSE FOR BEGINNERS

written by

Nick Pendar, Ph.D., Iowa State University

edited by

Zvjezdana Vrzić, Ph.D., and Atousa Mirzaei

LIVING LANGUAGE®

Living Language is a member of the Random House Information Group

Published in the United States by Living Language, an imprint of Random House, Inc.

www.livinglanguage.com

Editor: Zvjezdana Vrzić
Production Editor: Lisbeth Dyer
Production Manager: Thomas Marshall
Interior Design: Sophie Ye Chin

First Edition

ISBN: 978-1-4000-2347-9

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data available upon request.

PRINTED IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Thanks to the Living Language team: Tom Russell, Nicole Benhabib, Christopher Warnasch, Zviezdana Verzich, Suzanne McQuade, Shaina Malkin, Elham Shabahat, Denise De Gennaro, Linda K. Schmidt, Lisbeth Dyer, Alison Skrabek, Tom Marshall, Fabrizio La Rocca, Tigist Getachew, and Sophie Ye Chin.

Course Outline

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

adj.	adjective
adv.	adverb
art.	article
aux.	auxiliary verb
colloq.	colloquial
conj.	conjunction
fml.	formal
inter.	interjection
infml.	informal
lit.	literally
n.	noun
num.	numeral
p.	preposition
pl.	plural
pro.	pronoun
sg.	singular
v.	verb

INTRODUCTION

So you've decided to learn Farsi. Congratulations! Learning a new language is one of the best and most rewarding decisions you can make in your lifetime. It opens up a door to a whole new world and a window into the minds of the people in that world. There is no better way to understand a nation and communicate with its people than by studying their literature and culture in their native language. At the same time, learning any new language is also a major commitment. It takes time, practice, and a great deal of patience. You learned your native language during the first seven or so years of your life through constant exposure to and use of the language. You shouldn't expect to learn a new language fluently in any time shorter than that. However, you can learn the basics of a language, understand everyday conversations, and make yourself understood to a fair degree in a couple of years with consistent practice and the right kind of input. This course is designed to help you take that initial step toward mastering Farsi, the language of Iran. This course covers most major Farsi grammatical concepts and basic vocabulary used in everyday situations. It should give you the head start you need toward becoming a proficient speaker of Farsi.

HOW TO USE THIS COURSE

This beginner-level course is designed to use both audio and visual instruction to help you master the basics of Farsi. No previous knowledge of Farsi at all is assumed.

Following this introduction, you'll find a section that teaches you everything you need to know about Farsi spelling and pronunciation. Use it in conjunction with the audio to become fully acquainted with the sounds of Farsi. Imitate the native speakers that you hear, but don't be worried if you don't sound quite native yourself; after all, you're not. Good pronunciation will come in time. Just use the pronunciation section enough that you're familiar with the sounds and spelling of Farsi. Then you can begin the fifteen lessons, each of which is dedicated to a particular topic and to a number of structural points.

As a general piece of advice, fight the urge to skip ahead or rush over any part of this course. It's designed in a careful sequence, and each section represents a building block that adds to everything before it while at the same time preparing you for everything that comes after it. Always move ahead at your own pace; if you don't understand something, or if you don't feel quite comfortable with some point, simply go over it again. That's the best way to make sure your learning experience is painless and effective.

Each lesson of this course contains the following sections:

Vocabulary Warm-Up

The vocabulary warm-up kicks off the lesson with key words you'll hear in

the dialogue. Many will be related to the topic of the lesson; some will be related to the grammar you'll be learning in that particular lesson.

Dialogue

The dialogue in each lesson serves the double purpose of allowing you to read and hear natural Farsi at work and teaching you about Farsi culture as well. Read these dialogues carefully; they'll contain the grammar and key phrases that you will be learning later in the lesson. Don't be afraid to read them several times, in fact, and to listen to them on the recordings a few times as well. Always go at your own pace, and stick with a section until you're comfortable with it.

Vocabulary

The vocabulary list contains new words from the dialogue as well as other words related to the overall topic of the lesson. You can refer to this list while reading through the dialogue, but of course the translation of the dialogue is also provided. Use the vocabulary lists to build a good foundation for your Farsi vocabulary, one topic at a time. Experiment with different methods of learning vocabulary—spoken or written repetition, flash cards, practice sentences, Web searches, etc. Be creative, and find what works for you.

Key Phrases

The key phrases section contains more practical words or phrases related to the lesson topic. Don't worry if you don't grasp the grammar behind each phrase right away. Treat the phrases as extended vocabulary lists; the grammar will be filled in as you progress, and the idiomatic and practical expressions you learn in the key phrases section will come in handy.

Culture Notes

Each lesson contains two culture notes. These notes are intended to give you a window on Farsi culture. The notes cover such topics as food, clothing, manners, and etiquette, and they also offer practical advice for anyone traveling to the Farsi-speaking region.

Grammar

Each lesson contains a number of notes on particular aspects of Farsi grammar. These notes are introduced in a careful sequence, so that they build on one another and explain the key structures you encounter in the lesson, particularly in the dialogue. Each point is explained in plain and simple language, and there are plenty of examples to help you understand. Grammar can be tricky for many beginning language learners, especially with a language that looks and sounds so different from English. But take your time on the grammar notes. Grammar is the nuts-and-bolts of any language learning; without it, you wouldn't know how to put words together!

Exercises

The exercises in each lesson will give you more opportunities to practice the grammar and vocabulary you've learned in each lesson. Each lesson includes an answer key at the end so that you can check your progress.

Independent Challenge

The most important part of learning a language is practice. These challenge activities are designed to give you ideas for finding contexts in your life where you can practice your Farsi. They're meant as a guide; if you feel inspired to create your own independent challenge activities, go right ahead. The more contact you have with a language, the better you'll learn it. And don't forget about the internet. Language learners have an incredible tool at their disposal—they can find newspapers, blogs, online references, travel and tourism sites, and much, much more, all of which can be used to add depth and color to language lessons.

Audio

The audio portion of this course is divided into two sets: Set A and Set B.

Set A includes the dialogue, vocabulary, key phrases, and several grammar examples from each lesson. This part of the audio course should be used along with the book, following the order of each lesson and allowing you to hear the words on the page in spoken Farsi. A good approach is to read each section first without the audio, so that you're prepared to get the most out of the audio when you do listen to it. Then, take it step-by-step and listen to each section at a time, always allowing yourself the time and repetition that you need.

**Helpful Hint:* Once you've listened to the dialogue several times while reading along in the book, try listening to it without the help of the book. This will help attune your ear to Farsi, and it will make understanding the spoken language easier down the line.

Set B is intended to be used on the go to supplement your studies. It contains the dialogue from each lesson, broken down into easily digestible sentences with English translations. You'll hear pauses after each line of dialogue; use the pause to repeat the line and practice your pronunciation. Set B also includes several audio-only exercises that do not appear in the book but are based on exactly the same grammar points. A good way to make use of Set B is to listen to it following each lesson, once you've comfortably completed reading the text and listening to the Set A audio. Use Set B wherever it's convenient for you—in the car, on the train, at the gym, while you do dishes, in the garden—it's up to you. You can also use Set B as a review of lessons you completed long ago to keep you on your toes!

Glossary

At the end of this book you'll find a Farsi–English/English–Farsi glossary. It includes all of the words from the vocabulary lists, plus any important vocabulary that's taught in the grammar notes. It also includes a wide range of common and practical words that may not come up in the context of this course. It's not meant as a complete dictionary, but it certainly includes enough to be a valuable reference tool for the beginning student of Farsi.

As you use this course, keep this in mind: language learning is a gradual process; it won't happen overnight. Still, with repeated exposure and practice, you'll find yourself becoming a better and better Farsi speaker each time you pick up this course. But languages aren't used by books; they're used by people. So, if you can, seek out speakers of Farsi where you live or on the internet. That way, you can practice the language and discover new people while you do.

مُوَفَّق باشید!
/movæffæq baš-id!/
Good luck!

FARSI OR PERSIAN?

The language you are about to learn has two names—Farsi and Persian. The reasons for this are historical. A long time ago, from about 648 BCE, the Persians (a tribe belonging to the people who called themselves Aryans) ruled a vast area including present-day Iran, Iraq, Afghanistan, Turkey, Syria, Armenia, and even parts of Egypt. They also had many battles with the Greeks. The Greeks would call these people *Perses*. The word then traveled through Europe and ended up in English as *Persians*. The word *Persia* was used throughout history by Europeans to refer to the country of the Persians and their language.

The people of Persia, however, called their country *Iran* (from an Old Iranian word meaning *the land of the Aryans*) and their language *Parsi*, and later, *Farsi*. In 1935, Reza Shah, the ruling king of Persia at the time, asked the international community to call the country by its native name, Iran. Thus the words *Persi*a and *Persian* gradually lost their popularity and gave way to *Iran* and *Farsi* as the names of the country and its official language, respectively. Some Iranians still prefer to call their language "Persian" rather than "Farsi" when they are speaking English in order to stay connected to their history. In this book we will call the language by its native name, Farsi, but from time to time the word "Persian" may be used to refer to the people, culture, and language of Iran.

FARSI WRITING SYSTEM

The writing system of modern Farsi is based on the Arabic alphabet with a few extra symbols for sounds that do not exist in Standard Arabic. The script differs significantly in several ways from the English writing system.

First, the script goes from right to left, which means that Farsi books open from the left. This is something that you should definitely keep in mind, because reading a mystery novel backwards is no fun.

Second, many letters are connected to each other within words. This means that for each letter there could be more than one form, and the form used depends on the letter's position in the word and whether or not it can connect to the following letter.

Third, some vowel sounds are not represented in the alphabet. These vowels are shown using diacritics (small markings above and below the letters) only in children's books, but they do not exist in writing for adults.

This means that beginners may have difficulty figuring out the pronunciation of a word based on its written form alone. This might sound discouraging at first, but it isn't as hard as you might think, especially considering that the pronunciation of English words isn't exactly predictable from their written forms either. Remember how you learned to pronounce the first *t* in *pa̱tient* as a *sh* sound and how you learned not to pronounce the *c* in *indic̱t*, not to mention the difference between the *i*'s in each? In order to facilitate learning the Farsi alphabet, you will be provided with phonetic alphabet pronunciations next to words where necessary.

FARSI ALPHABET

There are 32 letters in Farsi alphabet. The following table shows the Farsi alphabet. For each letter, its different forms, its name, and the sound or sounds associated with it are also shown. Because Farsi is written from right to left, tables containing Farsi text are arranged from right to left, too. Remember to read the following table and other tables like it from the right.

FARSI ALPHABET

SOUND	NAME OF THE LETTER		LETTER		
			END	MIDDLE	BEGINNING
/a/ /æ/ /'/	/ælef/	اَلِف	ـا	ئـ	آ ا ئـ
/b/	/be/	بِـه	ـب	ـبـ	بـ
/p/	/pe/	پِـه	ـپ	ـپـ	پـ

SOUND	NAME OF THE LETTER		LETTER		
			END	MIDDLE	BEGINNING
/t/	/te/	تـِه	ت	ـتـ	تـ
/s/	/se/	ثـِه	ث	ـثـ	ثـ
/j/	/jim/	جیم	ـج ج	ـجـ	جـ
/č/	/če/	چـِه	ـچ چ	ـچـ	چـ
/h/	/he/	حـِه	ـح ح	ـحـ	حـ
/x/	/xe/	خـِه	ـخ خ	ـخـ	خـ
/d/	/dal/	دال	د	د	د
/z/	/zal/	ذال	ذ	ذ	ذ
/r/	/re/	رِ	ر	ر	ر
/z/	/ze/	زِ	ز	ز	ز
/ž/	/že/	ژِ	ژ	ژ	ژ
/s/	/sin/	سین	س	ـسـ	سـ
/š/	/šin/	شین	ش	ـشـ	شـ
/s/	/sad/	صاد	ص	ـصـ	صـ
/z/	/zad/	ضاد	ض	ـضـ	ضـ
/t/	/ta/	طا	ط	ط	ط
/z/	/za/	ظا	ظ	ظ	ظ
/'/	/'eyn/	عـِین	ـع ع	ـعـ	عـ
/q/	/qeyn/	غـِین	ـغ غ	ـغـ	غـ
/f/	/fe/	فـِه	ف	ـفـ	فـ
/q/	/qaf/	قاف	ق	ـقـ	قـ
/k/	/kaf/	کاف	ـک ک	ـکـ	کـ
/g/	/gaf/	گاف	ـگ گ	ـگـ	گـ
/l/	/lam/	لام	ل	ـلـ	لـ
/m/	/mim/	میم	م	ـمـ	مـ
/n/	/nun/	نون	ن	ـنـ	نـ
/v/	/vav/	واو	و	و	و
/h/	/he/	هِـه	ـه ه	ـهـ	هـ
/y/	/ye/	یـِه	ـی ی	ـیـ	یـ

The forms in the column labeled *beginning* appear at the beginning of the word, those in the column labeled *middle* come in the middle of the word, and the ones in the column labeled *end* come at the end of the word.

We can also categorize letters based on whether they get attached to their adjacent letters, and on which side or sides, as follows:

a. Forms that attach *only* to the following letter (the one on their left):

عـ غـ کـ گـ هـ

b. Forms that attach *only* to the preceding letter (the one on their right):

ـا ـب ـپ ـت ـث ـج ـچ ـح ـخ ـد ـذ ـر ـز ـژ ـس ـش
ـص ـض ـع ـغ ـف ـق ـک ـگ ـل ـم ـن ـو ـه ـی

c. Forms that attach to both the preceding and the following letters:

ـئـ ـبـ ـپـ ـتـ ـثـ ـجـ ـچـ ـحـ ـخـ ـسـ ـشـ ـصـ ـضـ ـطـ ـظـ ـعـ
ـغـ ـفـ ـقـ ـکـ ـگـ ـلـ ـمـ ـنـ ـهـ ـیـ

d. Forms that don't attach to their adjacent letters:

آ ه ی

You may have noticed that for some sounds there are several letters. For example, the letters ص, س and ث all represent the /s/ sound, and ط and ت both represent the /t/ sound. There is a historical reason for that. As mentioned before, the writing system of Farsi was borrowed from Arabic after the adoption of Islam. The older writing systems died out during the period when Arabic was the official language in Iran. The Arabic sound system is more complex than that of Farsi, and when Persians adopted the script that was written for that more complex sound system, they ended up with many letters that, to them, all sounded the same. But instead of dropping those letters from the alphabet, they decided to keep them in words they borrowed from Arabic.

THE SOUNDS OF FARSI

The phonetic alphabet that we will be using is shown below together with a description of what sound each symbol represents and an example of each. Farsi has twenty-two consonant sounds and six vowel sounds. These sounds are listed in the tables below. For each phonetic symbol, at least one illustrative English example (where possible) and one Farsi example are given to show you what sound the symbol represents. You can learn to

produce the actual Farsi sounds represented by these symbols by comparing the pronunciation guides in the vocabulary sections of the book with the pronunciations of the words on the accompanying CDs. To distinguish the phonetic transcriptions of the Farsi words from their English translations, the phonetic symbols are placed between two slanted lines (/ /).

Phonetic Symbols for Farsi Consonant Sounds

The table shows the Farsi consonant sounds. The letters that correspond to the sounds represented by the phonetic symbols appear in boldface type in the examples.

FARSI CONSONANTS

SYMBOL	APPROXIMATE ENGLISH SOUND	FARSI EXAMPLE
/b/	bat, cab	/ba/, with با /tab/, swing تاب
/č/	church	/čiz/, thing چیز /pič/, screw پیچ
/d/	door, cord	/dær/, door دَر /mædd/, tide مد
/f/	farm, calf	/fil/, elephant فیل /kæf/, foam کَف
/g/	gold, mug	/gol/, flower گُل /sæg/, dog سَگ
/h/	heart	/holu/, peach هُلو /meh/, fog مه
/j/	jury, badge	/juje/, chick جوجه /kæj/, crooked کَج
/k/	kite	/kif/, bag, purse کیف /kælæk/, trick کَلَک
/l/	lamb	/lamp/, lightbulb لامپ /mal/, possession مال
/m/	man	/mæn/, I مَن /kæm/, little کَم
/n/	noon	/nan/, bread نان
/p/	pool, map	/pul/, money پول /lamp/, lightbulb لامپ

SYMBOL	APPROXIMATE ENGLISH SOUND	FARSI EXAMPLE
/q/	(see note 1 below)	/qofl/, lock قُفل /qašoq/, spoon قاشق
/r/	root, car (see note 2 below)	/rah/, road, way راه /sær/, head سر
/s/	soon, bass	/sup/, soup سوپ /gilas/, cherry گیلاس
/t/	team, bat	/tim/, team تیم /kot/, coat, jacket کُت
/v/	valley, cave	/væli/, but ولی /gav/, cow, bull گاو
/x/	(see note 3 below)	/xub/, good خوب /mix/, nail میخ
/y/	yellow	/yar/, companion, friend یار /ruy/, zinc روی
/z/	zebra, maze	/ziba/, beautiful زیبا /boz/, goat بز
/ž/	azure, leisure, beige	/žale/, dew ژاله /pež-vak/, echo پژواک
/'/	(see note 4 below)	/'ali/, excellent عالی /sæ'y/, effort سعی

Notes:

(1) The sound */q/* doesn't exist in English. It sounds like a *g* but pronounced with the back of the tongue touching the very back of the soft part of the roof of your mouth, the same place where the French *r* is produced.

(2) The sound */r/* is rolled, almost similar to the Italian or Spanish *r*.

(3) */x/* doesn't exist in English either. It is the soft friction sound that one hears in the German pronunciation of *ch* in the word *Bach*. This sound is produced by lightly touching the soft part of the roof of your mouth with the back of your tongue.

(4) The sound */'/* does not typically appear in standard English. It is, however, found in certain dialects. For example, you can hear it in the Cockney pronunciation of *t* in the word *bottle*, */ba'l/*.

You will also notice that the phonetic transcriptions of the words may contain hyphens (-). Hyphens will be used to separate the meaningful parts of words (e.g., suffixes and prefixes) from each other to facilitate pronunciation as well as understanding of the meanings of words. For

example, the word كتاب (book) is transcribed as /ketab/, and the word خانه (house) is transcribed as /xane/. Then, the word كتابخانه (library) will be transcribed as /ketab-xane/. This transcription highlights the facts that كتابخانه (library) is made up of two smaller meaningful units and that it literally means *book house.*

Phonetic Symbols for Farsi Vowel Sounds

The table below consists of the phonetic symbols for Farsi vowel sounds. As with the previous table, the letters in the English examples that correspond to the sound represented by the phonetic symbol appear in boldface type.

FARSI VOWELS

SYMBOL	EXAMPLE	FARSI EXAMPLE
/i/	keep, bean	/iman/, faith ايمان /sib/, apple سيب /ali/, excellent عالى
/e/	cape, bait (see note 1 below)	/edare/, office, bureau اِداره /mesvak/, toothbrush مِسواک /se/, three سه
/æ/	at	/ænar/, pomegranate انار /pedær/, father پِدَر
/u/	suit, boot	/u/, he, she او /sut/, whistle سوت
/o/	bowl, coat (see note 2 below)	/kot/, coat, jacket کُت /šol/, loose شُل
/a/	bar	/ab/, water آب /bar/, load بار /baba/, dad بابا

Notes:

(1) The /e/ sound in English is always followed by the /y/ sound, as in the above examples (*cape* and *bait*). Farsi, on the other hand, resembles French in this respect; /e/ is not followed by the /y/ sound.

(2) Similarly, /o/ in English is always followed by the /w/ sound, as in *coat, bowl*, or *boat*, but in Farsi this is not the case.

The Vowel /a/

Let us now try to make some words with these letters. Consider the letters آ (/a/), ب (/b/), ت (/t/), د (/d/), and ن (/n/). We can make several words with these.

For example, آب is pronounced /ab/ and means water. Remember to read from right to left. What do you think this word sounds like? آبان

If you said /aban/, you are right. آبان is the name of the eighth month in the Persian calendar. Now try this: آبادان

Yes, it is /abadan/. آبادان is the name of a city in southern Iran. Usually, if ا is the first letter in the word, it appears as آ and is pronounced /a/. The same letter may appear as ا at the beginning of a word, but it will sound like /æ/, /e/, or /o/.

Now try this word: باد

It is pronounced /bad/ and means *wind.*

How about this? تاب

This one is pronounced /tab/, and it means *swing.*

Now take a look at this word: نان

It is pronounced /nan/, and it means *bread.*

And this: ناب

What do you think this one sounds like? Did you say /nab/? Yes! This word means *genuine.*

Now try this: دانا

This should be easy now. It is pronounced /dana/, and it means *knowledgeable.*

Let's try a longer word: نادان

This one is the opposite of دانا. It is pronounced /nadan/, and it means *ignorant.*

The Vowel /i/

This vowel is also written in the Farsi script. The letter for it is ی and all its variants. Let's look at some examples of its use.

سیب، بیل، دیر، زیر، تیز، بیست

These words are, from right to left, /sib/ (apple), /bil/ (shovel), /dir/ (late), /zir/ (under), /tiz/ (sharp), and /bist/ (twenty).

The letter ی is also pronounced /y/, when it is preceded or followed by another vowel.

یا، یار، وای، لای

The above words, for example, are, from right to left, /ya/ (or), /yar/ (companion, friend), /vay/ (wow), and /lay/ (dirt). (Notice that when ل and ا are put together, they show up as لا /la/.)

The Vowel /u/

So far the vowels we have been using in our words have been /a/ and /i/. Here's another one: /u/, which is written with و. But you must be careful with this one. This letter stands for /u/ as well as /o/ and even the consonant /v/. Let's look at some examples of و used for /u/.

Our first example is: بو

This word is pronounced /bu/, and it means *smell* or *scent*.

Now try this: نور

This time the consonant ر /r/ is also used. This word is pronounced /nur/ and means *light*, as in *sunlight*.

Here's another word: بور

This one is pronounced /bur/ and means *blonde*.

Now try these: سور، شور، کور، گور، دور، زور

They are pronounced, from right to left, /sur/ (banquet), /šur/ (salty), /kur/ (blind), /gur/ (grave), /dur/ (far), and /zur/ (force).

و is also pronounced /v/, as in واو /vav/, the name of the letter و; this pronunciation is usually found when و is preceded or followed by another vowel. Look at these examples:

گاو، ناو، وان، وال

From right to left, the above words are /gav/ (cow/bull), /nav/ (navy ship), /van/ (bathtub), and /val/ (whale).

The Vowel /o/

As mentioned before, sometimes و is also used for the vowel /o/. Here are some examples of its use as /o/.

نو، تو، دو

These words are /no/ (new), /to/ (you, *sg.*), and /do/ (two).

و is often used as /o/ when it's at the end of a syllable, and the vowel is pronounced /ow/ (kind of like the English word *row*). Other times, /o/ is not written. To help beginners, elementary textbooks may use diacritics

to clarify which vowel follows a consonant. This diacritic, which we will also use sometimes, is ُ, a little و placed above a consonant. See these examples:

بُرد، دُم، شُل، پُل

These words are, from right to left, /bord/ (took), /dom/ (tail), /šol/ (loose), and /pol/ (bridge).

The Vowel /æ/

This vowel is not written either. The diacritic used for it is َ, a small slanted line placed above the consonant that precedes it in pronunciation. Look at these examples:

بَد، بَم، دَم، دَرد، سَم، سَرد

These words are, from right to left, /bæd/ (bad), /bæm/ (bass), /dæm/ (breath), /dærd/ (pain), /sæmm/ (poison), and /særd/ (cold).

/æ/ may also follow ا, as in these examples:

اَست، اَسب، اَبر، اَمر

These words are, from right to left, /æst/ (is), /æsb/ (horse), /æbr/ (cloud), and /æmr/ (order, decree).

The Vowel /e/

This vowel is not represented by a letter of the alphabet either. The diacritic used for it to help learners is ِ, a little slanted line placed under the consonant that carries it. Look at these examples:

دِژ، صِدا، کِتاب

These words are, from right to left, /dež/ (fortress), /seda/ (sound, voice), and /ketab/ (book).

If /e/ is at the beginning of a word, then the letter ا is used to show it.

اِستِپ، اِثبات، اِداره

These words are, from right to left, /estep/ (steppe), /esbat/ (proof), and /edare/ (office).

If /e/ is at the end of a word, then it is written with ه, as in these examples.

به، سه، اداره، پدیده

These words are, from right to left, /be/ (to), /se/ (three), /edare/ (office), and /pædide/ (phenomenon).

The following table summarizes the discussion of vowels and their symbols in Farsi.

VOWEL	WRITTEN SYMBOL	VOWEL	WRITTEN SYMBOL
/i/	ی	/u/	و
/e/	ـِ	/o/	و ، ـُ
/æ/	ـَ	/a/	آ ، ا

Note: From now on, wherever we want to show a diacritic alone, we will place it over or under a small horizontal line (_), as in the table above, for convenience.

Geminate Consonants

Farsi uses geminate consonants especially in words that have been borrowed from Arabic. A geminate consonant is pronounced twice as long as a simple consonant. Look at the following words, for example, from right to left. In all of these pairs, the first word uses simple consonants and the second one contains a geminate consonant. In beginners' books, geminates are shown with the diacritic symbol ـّ above the letter.

/dærre/, valley دَرّه	/dær/, door دَر
/bæče/, child بَچّه	/če/, what چِه
/gælle/, herd گَلّه	/gele/, complaint گِله

This should get you started. Other rules about reading the Farsi script will follow as we progress through the course. Diacritics will be used in this book, but as the course progresses, their use will be gradually reduced, especially for known words.

WRITTEN VS. SPOKEN FARSI

Spoken Farsi deviates from written Farsi in many respects. This is of course true of all languages, but in Farsi it is more noticeable. Just to give you an idea of the differences that can exist between words in speech and in writing, note that in English the form *going to* is usually pronounced *gonna*, and *want to* and *got to* are pronounced *wanna* and *gotta*, respectively.

In Farsi, especially in the dialect of Tehran, many /a/ sounds turn into /u/ before /m/ and /n/ in spoken language. Also, many common verb stems get reduced to a single consonant, and many endings change. These differences will be pointed out as we go along.

LESSON 1

Hello!

In this lesson, we will learn about basic greetings and introductions in Farsi. We will also learn about personal pronouns, the possessive construction, and using some simple verbs. But let's warm up with some common phrases.

In order to get a head start with reading and writing and not get entangled in the alphabet, it is a good idea to learn the shape of each new word as a whole and not try to break words up into letters in the first place. Get a pack of index cards, and write each word you learn on one side of a card and its pronunciation and meaning on the other side. Review the cards frequently until you can recognize the words and their meanings just by looking at their Farsi written form. Then, as you accumulate more cards, you can take out the ones that you know and go back to them from time to time for review. As you build up vocabulary and review the alphabet, you will notice that you are also picking up how the alphabet works.

Also remember that Farsi goes from right to left. First read the Farsi column on the right, then check the pronunciation in the middle, and only after that should you look at the English translation on the left.

1A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

Hello!	/sælam!/	سَلام!
How are you?	/hale šoma če-tor æst?/, /hale šoma če-tore?/	حالِ شُما چطور است؟، حالِ شُما چطوره؟
What is your name?	/esme šoma čist?/, /esme šoma čiye?/	اِسمِ شما چیست؟، اِسمِ شما چیه؟
Pardon me. / Excuse me.	/bebæxšid./, /bebæxšin./	بِبَخشید، ببخشین.
Good-bye.	/xodahafez./, /xodafez./	خداحافظ، خدافظ.

As mentioned earlier, there are consistent differences in Farsi between the written, or formal, language and the spoken, or informal,

language. The pronunciation and spelling of the same words differ depending on the usage style chosen. For instance, the pronunciation and spelling of verbs differ depending on the style. In all vocabulary lists (including the glossaries), both the written/formal and spoken/informal pronunciation and spelling will be provided for the same word, with the formal one coming first. In the dialogues, the informal style, pronunciation, and spelling will prevail, as they do in everyday communication. In order to help the learner, the written/formal spellings of all verbs appearing in the dialogues will be given in parentheses at their first occurrence. In the grammar examples, the spelling will be mainly written/formal unless the example is a direct quote from the dialogue, where an informal spelling and pronunciation were used.

1B. DIALOGUE

Shabnam runs into Ramin at Tehran Mehrabad airport. She is picking up an old friend of her husband's, Mr. Jim Douglas, who is arriving any minute now from Canada. Jim is a Middle East scholar and knows Farsi well, but this is his first visit to Iran in about fifteen years.

شَبنَم: سَلام!

/šæbnæm/: /sælam!/

رامین: سلام! حالِ شما چطوره؟

/ramin/: /sælam! hale šoma če-tor-e?/

شَبنَم: مَن خوبَم. خِیلی مَمنون. خانوم خوب هَستَن (هستند)؟

/šæbnæm/: /mæn xubam. xeyli mæmnun. xanum xub hæstæn (hæstænd)?/

رامین: بَله مِرسی. شُما اینجا مُنتَظِرِ کَسی هَستین (هستید)؟

/ramin/: /bæle, mersi. šoma inja montæzere kæsi hæstin (hæstid)?/

شَبنَم: بله.اِمروز دوستِ ما از کانادا به ایران میاد (می آید).

/šæbnæm/: /bæle, emruz dust-e ma æz kanada be iran mi-ya-d (mi-a-yæd)./

رامین: از کانادا؟ چه خوب! اسمِشون چیه؟

/ramin/: /æz kanada? če xub! esm-e-šun či-ye?/

شَبنَم: داگلاس.

:/šæbnæm/ /daglas./

رامین: ببخشین (ببَخشید)؟

:/ramin/ /bebæxš-in (bebæxš-id)?/

شَبنَم: اسمشون هست آقای جیم داگلاس.

:/šæbnæm/ /esmešun hæst aqaye jim daglas./

رامین: دوستِ شُما هَستَن؟

:/ramin/ /dust-e šoma hæst-æn?/

شَبنَم: ایشون دوستِ شوهَرِ مَن هَستَن.

:/šæbnæm/ /išun dust-e šohær-e mæn hæst-æn./

رامین: کِی به تِهران می رسن (می رسَند)؟

:/ramin/ /key be tehran mi-res-æn (mi-res-ænd)?/

شَبنَم: چیزی نَمونده. بایَد بِزودی پِیداشون بِشِه (بشود).

:/šæbnæm/ /čizi næ-mun-de. bayæd be-zud-i peyda-šun be-š-e (be-šæv-æd)./

رامین: بِسیار خُوب. خُداحافِظ.

:/ramin/ /besiyar xob. xodahafez./

شَبنَم: خُداحافِظ.

:/šæbnæm/ /xodahafez./

Shabnam:	Hello!
Ramin:	Hi! How are you?
Shabnam:	I am fine. Thank you very much. Is your wife fine?
Ramin:	Yes, thanks. Are you waiting for someone here?
Shabnam:	Yes, our friend is coming to Iran from Canada today.
Ramin:	From Canada? How nice! What's his name?
Shabnam:	Douglas.
Ramin:	Pardon?
Shabnam:	His name is Mr. Jim Douglas.
Ramin:	Is he your friend?
Shabnam:	He's my husband's friend.

Ramin: When is he arriving in Tehran?

Shabnam: Any time now. He must show up soon.

Ramin: All right. Good-bye.

Shabnam: Good-bye.

Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue you just practiced.

A. Ramin wants to know how Shabam is. What does he say?

۱. حالِ شما چطوره؟ ۲. سلام! ۳. خانم خوب هستن؟

B. When Ramin doesn't get Mr. Douglas's name, how does he ask Shabnam to repeat the name?

۱. شما اینجا منتظرِ کسی هستین؟ ۲. ببخشین؟ ۳. دوستِ شُما هَستَن؟

C. How do you say *yes, thanks* in Farsi?

۱. خداحافظ. ۲. چه خوب! ۳. بله، مرسی.

D. How do you say *good-bye* in Farsi?

۱. خداحافظ ۲. چه خوب! ۳. ببخشید.

E. What does سلام mean?

1C. VOCABULARY

These are the new words used in the dialogue. Note that they are in the Farsi alphabetical order. *Remember to read these tables from right to left.*

sir, mister, Mr.	/aqa/	آقا
from/of	/æz/	اَز
name	/esm/	اِسم
today	/emruz/	اِمروز
Iran	/iran/	ایران
must	/bayæd/	بایَد
soon	/be-zudi/	بِزودی
very well, all right	/besiyar xob/	بِسیار خوب
yes	/bale/	بَلِه

to	/be/	بِـه
Tehran	/tehran/	تِهران
how	/če-tor/	چِطور
what	/či/, /če/	چی، چه
(physical) condition	/hal/	حال
lady, wife, Mrs., Ms.	/xanom/, /xanum/	خانُم، خانوم
good	/xub/	خوب
very, a lot	/xeyli/	خِیلی
friend, friends	/dust/, /dustan/	دوست، دوستان
husband	/šohær/	شوهَر
old	/qædim-i/	قَدیمی
someone	/kæsi/	کَسی
when	/key/	کِی
thanks	/mersi/	مِرسی
thanks, grateful	/mæmnun/	مَمنون
waiting	/montæzer/	مُنتَظِر

1D. KEY PHRASES

Hello. (*fml.*)	/sælam æleykom./	سَلام عَلَیکُم.
Good day.	/ruz be-xeyr./	روز بِخیر.
Good morning.	/sobh be-xeyr./	صُبح بِخیر.
Good afternoon/evening.	/æsr be-xeyr./	عَصر بِخیر.
Good night.	/šæb be-xeyr./	شَب بِخیر.
How are you? (*fml.*)	/hal-etan če-tor-e?/, /haletun če-tor-e?/	حالِتان چطوره؟
How are you? (*infml.*)	/hal-et če-tor-e?/	حالِت چطوره؟
Are you well? (*infml.*)	/hal-et xub-e?/	حالِت خوبه؟
Are you well? (*infml.*)	/xub-i?/	خوبی؟
Is you husband well? (*fml.*)	/šohær-etan xub-ænd?/	شوهرتان خوبَند؟
How is your husband? (*infml.*)	/hal-e šohær-etun če-tor-e?/	حالِ شوهرتون چطوره؟

What is your name? (*fml.*)	/esm-e šoma či-ye?/	اسمِ شما چیه؟
What is your name? (*fml.*)	/esm-etan či-ye?/, /esm-etun či-ye?/	اسمتان/اسمتون چیه؟
What is your name? (*infml.*)	/esm-et či-ye?/	اسمِت چیه؟
What is his/her name? (*fml.*)	/esm-ešan či-ye?/, /esm-ešun či-ye?/	اسمشان/اسمِشون چیه؟
What is his/her/its name? (*infml.*)	/esm-eš či-ye?/	اسمِش چیه؟
My name is Shabnam.	/esm-e mæn šæbnæm-e./	اسمِ من شبنمه.
His name is Ramin. (*fml.*)	/esme-šun ramin-e./	اسمِشون رامینه.
His name is Ramin. (*infml.*)	/esm-eš ramin-e./	اسمِش رامینه.

1E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Greetings in the Persian Culture

Greetings are very important in the Iranian culture. Family members and colleagues always greet each other when they meet. It is also very important to greet people before you start talking to them. Greeting in the Persian culture is almost a ritual, and it might take longer than it does in Western societies. During a family or a formal gathering, it is common to see the same two people asking each other how they are more than once. This is a form of acknowledging the person's presence and letting him or her know that you care.

Just starting talking to someone before greeting him or her is considered rude. Using plural pronouns (e.g., plural *you*) and plural forms of verbs to refer to individuals, especially elders, is a sign of respect and is used in formal and semiformal situations. This would be like referring to someone you respect as *they,* and say things like *They are here* to mean that he or she is here. Friends use singular pronouns and verbs to refer to each other. Farsi does not have gender, which means that there is no distinction between *he* and *she*. This is in fact a source of confusion for Farsi speakers learning a language like English, which has this distinction.

1F. GRAMMAR

Farsi Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns are words that are used to refer to people or things without using their names. Subject pronouns are used in the subject position of the sentence—i.e., the beginning of the sentence—to refer to the person who performs the action described in the sentence. In English, personal subject pronouns are the words *I, you, he, she, it, we, you,* and *they*. English also has a set of object pronouns—*me, you, him, her, it, us, you,* and *them*—and a set of possessive pronouns—*mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, yours,* and *theirs*. There is also a set of possessive determiners in English—*my, your, his, her, its, our, your,* and *their*. The pronoun system in Farsi is far simpler; it only includes the pronouns listed in the table below.

FARSI PERSONAL PRONOUNS

I, me, my	/mæn/	مَن
you, your (*sg.*)	/to/	تو
he/she/it, him/her, his/her/its	/u/, /an/	او ، آن
we, us, our	/ma/	ما
you, your (*pl.*)	/šoma/	شُما
they, them, their; he/she, his/her (*sg. fml.*)	/an-ha/; /išan/	آنها، ایشان

Notice that there are two forms for the third person singular (*he/she/it*), namely, او (/u/) and آن (/an/). The first of these forms (او) is used to refer to people (male or female), and the second form (آن) is used for nonhumans. Also note that there are two forms for the third person plural, *they*—آنها (/an-ha/) and ایشان (/išan/). The first one (آنها) is used to refer to more than one person (*they*). The second one (ایشان) is used to refer to a single person in a more formal, respectful way; while the meaning of ایشان is singular, it is listed as a plural pronoun because it is used with a plural form of the verb. In spoken language, ایشان is often pronounced ایشون (/išun/).

Look at these examples that use personal pronouns.

ایشان کِی به تِهران می رسَند؟
/išan key be tehran mi-res-ænd?/
When does he arrive in Tehran?

شُما اینجا مُنتَظِرِ کَسی هَستید؟
/šoma inja montæzer-e kæs-i hæst-id?/
Are you waiting for someone here?

او شَبنَم اَست.
/u šæbnæm æst./
She is Shabnam.

Possessive Construction

Possessive constructions, like *my book, her name,* or *John's bag,* are those that tell us who something belongs to. In Farsi, the possessor is mentioned last in a possessive construction (literally, "book my"). The noun group that expresses what belongs to the possessor is mentioned first and is connected to the possessor with the vowel /e/, which is roughly equivalent to the English *of*. This vowel does not normally show up in writing, but it is marked in the examples below.

POSSESSIVE CONSTRUCTION

my name	/esm-e mæn/	اسمِ من
your name (*sg.*)	/esm-e to/	اسمِ تو
his/her name, its name	/esm-e u/, /esm-e an/	اسمِ او، اسمِ آن
our name	/esm-e ma/	اسمِ ما
your name (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*)	/esm-e šoma/	اسمِ شما
their name, his/her name (*sg. fml.*)	/esm-e anha/, /esm-e išan/	اسمِ آنها، اسمِ ایشان

The Present Tense

Verbs are words that talk about actions. For example, in the sentence *She talked to him,* the word *talked* is the verb. Verbs in Farsi are inflected for tense and person. This means that depending on the time of the action and the person who performed it, we add prefixes and suffixes to the verb. Prefixes are meaningful units that are attached to the beginning of words, and suffixes are those that are attached to the end of words.

The present tense of the verb بودَن (/bud-æn/, to be) is conjugated as follows. (When we list all the possible forms of a verb in a certain tense for all persons, we say that we are conjugating that verb.)

Here are the present tense forms of the verb بودَن (/bud-æn/, to be).

THE VERB بودَن (/bud-æn/, to be) IN THE PRESENT TENSE

(I) am	/hæst-æm/	هَستَم	1st	SINGULAR
(you) are (*sg.*)	/hæst-i/	هَستی	2nd	
(he/she/it) is	/hæst/, /æst/	هَست/اَست	3rd	
(we) are	/hæst-im/	هَستیم	1st	PLURAL
(you) are (*pl.* and *sg. fml.*)	/hæst-id/	هَستید	2nd	
(they) are / (he /she) is (*sg. fml.*)	/hæst-ænd/	هَستَند	3rd	

Note: The infinitive forms of verbs in Farsi are made with the past stem of the verb. That is why the verb بودَن is conjugated as هستَم, etc., in the table above—that is, using a very different root form. Verb forms and the present and past stems are discussed in lessons 4 and 5.

As you can see, the stem هست (/hæst/) is given a suffix based on person.

The verbs هَست (/hæst/) and اَست (/æst/) both mean *is*, but the former has an existential meaning—that is, it is used in the same situations where English speakers use *there is/are*. For example:

اینجا یک کِتاب هَست.
/inja yek ketab hæst./
There is a book here.

But:

کتاب خوب است.
/ketab xub æst./
The book is good.

You may have noticed that word order in Farsi is different from English. In Farsi, the verb usually appears at the end of a sentence and follows the object, whereas in English it usually appears earlier and precedes the object, as in the examples below:

شَبنَم رامین را دید.
/šæbnæm ramin ra did./
Shabnam saw Ramin.

من شبنم هَستَم.
/mæn šæbnæm hæstæm./
I am Shabnam.

تو رامین هَستی.
/to ramin hæsti./
You are Ramin.

او جیم است.
/u jim æst./
He is Jim.

ما اینجا هَستیم.
/ma inja hæstim./
We are here.

شما دَر تِهران هَستید.
/šoma dær tehran hæstid./
You are in Tehran.

آنها دَر کانادا هَستَند.
/anha dar kanada hæstænd./
They are in Canada.

Vocabulary Note: The word در (/dær/) means *in* or *at*.

Usage Note: The word را (/ra/) in the first example is an object marker. We will talk about this marker later.

The verb است (/æst/, is) in spoken language turns into the suffix ه (/e/), e.g., اسمِ من رامینه (/esm-e mæn ramin-e/, My name is Ramin), as opposed to اسمِ من رامین است (/esm-e mæn ravmin æst/, My name is Ramin).

The present tense of verbs other than بودَن (/bud-æn/, to be) is a little different. Like بودن,, the present stem of other verbs takes a suffix based on person; unlike بودن, the present stem also takes the prefix می (/mi-/). For example, the verb کردن (/kærd-æn/, to do), with the present stem کُن (/kon/), has the following forms.

Take a look at the present tense forms of the verb کَردَن (/kærd-æn/, to do).

THE VERB کَردَن (/kærd-æn/, to do) IN THE PRESENT TENSE

(I) do	/mi-kon-æm/	می کُنَم
(you) do (*sg.*)	/mi-kon-i/	می کُنی
(he/she/it) does	/mi-kon-æd/	می کُنَد
(we) do	/mi-kon-im/	می کُنیم
(you) do (*pl.* and *sg. fml.*)	/mi-kon-id/	می کُنید
(they) do, (he/she) does (*sg. fml.*)	/mi-kon-ænd/	می کُنَند

This is a very useful verb because many verbs in Farsi are created by combining this verb (and a few other verbs like this) with another word. For example, the verb *to live* in Farsi is زندگی کردن (/zendegi kærdæn/), which, if translated literally, would mean *to do living* or *to do life* in English.

Usage Note: In spoken language, the third person singular form می کند (/mi-kon-æd/) is pronounced می کنه (/mi-kon-e/). The same is true of all verbs, i.e., the suffix /-æd/ in written form turns into /-e/ in spoken form. Also note that when a word ends in the vowel /-e/, it is written with ه. This is *not* the same as the suffix ه, which is the spoken form of the verb است.

In Farsi, it is also possible to completely drop the subject of a sentence, because the verb already carries information about the subject. For example, instead of saying:

من در تهران زندگی می کنم.
/mæn dær tehran zende-gi mi-kon-æm./
I live in Tehran.

we can say:

در تهران زندگی می کنم.
/dær tehran zende-gi mi-kon-æm./
I live in Tehran.

Dropping the subject is quite common in Farsi.

1G. READING

Read the following sentences about Shabnam. Try to get comfortable with the way the words look. As mentioned at the beginning of the lesson, when learning the Farsi alphabet, it helps to recognize words as a whole, in addition to knowing how to put the letters together, to figure out how to pronounce the words.

سَلام. مَن شبنم هَستم. رامین دوستِ مَن است. جیم دوستِ شوهرِ مَن است. شوهرِ من مانی است.

Hello. I am Shabnam. Ramin is my friend. Jim is my husband's friend. My husband is Mani.

1H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

At the airports in Iran, it is quite common to see groups of family members or friends carrying flowers and waiting to greet their guests. Probably the most notable difference for a Western visitor on arrival is how

women dress. According to the dress code enforced since the 1979 Islamic revolution in Iran, women must fully cover their hair and bodies. Depending on their beliefs and social class, women wear a range of styles of clothing, from the traditional black sheet called چادُر (/čador/) to a shorter overall—called مانتو (/manto/, from the French word *manteau*)—together with a colorful scarf. You will probably find most Iranians friendly and yet formal. Men often shake hands and sometimes lightly kiss their male friends and relatives on the cheeks. Women do the same with other women. Women don't typically shake hands with men or kiss them in public. Some women, depending on their religious beliefs, do shake hands with men, but usually only in a private setting. People often introduce themselves by their last names. When introducing other people, individuals tend to say that person's title before his or her last name. Saying one's own title is unusual. You can learn more about Iran and Iranian culture by visiting http://persia.org/.

Exercises

The exercises are enumerated using Hindi numerals, which are used in Farsi. Unlike the alphabet, numerals go from left to right, just like they do in English. Here is a list to help you remember what they are:

٠	١	٢	٣	٤	٥	٦	٧	٨	٩	١٠
0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10

A. Complete the following sentences with the correct present tense form of the verb بودن.

١. من اینجا ________.

٢. شما در تهران ________.

٣. آنها در ایران ________.

٤. او خانم من ________.

٥. تو دوست من ________.

٦. ما در کانادا ________.

B. Complete the following dialogue using the words below. There are more words in the list than required.

باید مرسی دوست سلام چطوره خوبه
خداحافظ در

الف- ________ (١) ________ ! حال شما ________ (٢) ________ ؟

ب- بله، ________ (۳) ________ . حال شما ________ (٤) ________ ؟

الف- من خوبم. ممنون. شما ________ (٥) ________ تهران زندگی می کنین؟

ب- بله. خوب من ________ (٦) ________. برم.

الف- بسیار خوب. ________ (٧) ________ .

ب- خداحافظ.

C. Use the words in parentheses to state individuals' names. The first one is done for you as an example.

١. (من، رامین) اسم من رامینه .or اسم من رامین است.

٢. (شما، شبنم)________.

٣. (او، جیم)________.

٤. (ایشان، مانی)________.

٥. (ما، رامین وَ شبنم)________.

Vocabulary Note: وَ (/væ/) means *and*.

D. Look back at the first dialogue in this lesson. Ramin wants to know when Jim will arrive in Tehran. He asks, کِی به تِهران میرسَند؟ (/key be tehran mi-res-ænd?/). Can you conjugate the verb رسیدن by comparing it to the verb کردن discussed above?

I arrive	____ (١) ____	we arrive	____ (٤) ____
you arrive	____ (٢) ____	you arrive	____ (٥) ____
he/she/it arrives	____ (٣) ____	they arrive	می رسند

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 1. B. 2. C. 3. D. 1. E. hello

Exercises

A.

۱. هستم ۲. هستید ۳. هستند ٤. است
٥. هستی ٦. هستیم

B.

۱. سلام ۲. خوبه ۳. مرسی ٤. چطوره ٥. در
٦. باید ۷. خداحافظ

C.

۲. اسم شما شبنمه. /
اسم شما شبنم است.

۳. اسم او جیمه. /
اسم او جیم است.

٤. اسم ایشان مانیه. /
اسم ایشان مانی است.

٥. اسم ما رامین و شبنمه. /
اسم ما رامین و شبنم است.

D.

۱. می رسم ٤. می رسیم
۲. می رسی ٥. می رسید
۳. می رسد

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

For this section, you need to prepare and maintain a language journal. At the end of each lesson, you are instructed to perform an independent task and write the results in the journal. These tasks are designed to give you more exposure to Farsi as used in real-world contexts, and completing them can be extremely rewarding and fun.

To start, take another look at the introduction to the Farsi alphabet, and also visit http://www.omniglot.com/writing/persian.htm for an alternative introduction to the alphabet. Then try writing a greeting dialogue of your own using the words and phrases you learned in this lesson. See if you can spell your own name in Farsi.

LESSON

2

Welcome, Jim!

In this lesson, we will learn about kinship terms in Farsi. We will also learn more about possessive constructions. The other grammatical terms that we cover are plurals of nouns and the object marker را (/ra/).

2A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

boy, son	/pesær/	پِسَر
suitcase	/čæmedan/, /čæmedun/	چَمِدان، چَمِدون
family	/xanevade/, /xunevade/	خانِواده ، خونواده
home, house	/xane/, /xune/	خانه، خونه
girl, daughter	/doxtær/	دُختَر
company	/šerkæt/	شِرکَت
work, job	/kar/	کار
where	/koja/	کُجا
bag, briefcase, purse, wallet	/kif/	کیف
car, vehicle, machine	/mašin/	ماشین

2B. DIALOGUE

Jim has arrived in Tehran and Shabnam will be driving him home. They have already met and are now walking toward Shabnam's car. Listen to their conversation that is taking place on the way to the car.

شبنم: جیم، به تهران خوش آمدی. حالِ خونواده اَت چطوره؟

/jim, be tehran xoš amæd-i. hal-e xunevade-æt če-tor-e?/ :/šæbnæm/

جیم: خیلی ممنون. هَمه خوبَند. خانومَم خِیلی بِهِت سَلام میرِسونه (می رساند).

/jim/: /xeyli mæmnun. hæme xub-ænd. xanum-æm xeyli be-het sælam mi-res-un-e (mi-res-an-æd)./

شبنم: دُختَرِت الآن چه کار می کنه (کار می کند)؟

/šæbnæm/: /doxtær-et æl'an če kar mi-kon-e (kar mi-kon-æd)?/

جیم: نیکول اَلآن توی ِ یِه شِرکَت کار می کنه.

/jim/: /nikol æl'an tu-ye ye šerkæt kar mi-kon-e./

شبنم: خانومِت چِطور؟ اون کُجاست؟

/šæbnæm/: /xanum-et če-tor-e? un koja-st?/

جیم: سوزان دَر یه دَبیرِستان کار می کنه. پِسَرِ شُما چه کار می کنه؟

/jim/: /suzan dær ye dæbir-estan kar mi-kon-e. pesær-e šoma če kar mi-kon-e?/

شبنم: پِسَرَم می رِه (می رود) دانِشگاه.

/šæbnæm/: /pesær-æm mi-r-e (mi-ræv-æd) daneš-gah./

جیم: اسمِش فرهادِه، نه؟

/jim/: /esm-eš færhad-e, næ?/

شبنم: آره. خوب دیگه، این هَم ماشین. چَمِدونِت رو (را) بِگذار عَقَب.

/šæbnæm/: /are. xob dige, in hæm mašin. čæmedun-et ro (ra) be-gozar ʿæqæb./

جیم: چِقَدر سَنگینه! کیفَم رو هَم می گذارم عَقَب.

/jim/: /če-qædr sæng-in-e! kif-æm ro hæm mi-gozar-am ʿæqab./

شبنم: بسیار خوب. بریم (برویم) خونه.

/šæbnæm/: /besiyar xob. be-r-im (be-ræv-im) xune./

Shabnam: Welcome to Tehran, Jim. How's your family?

Jim: Thanks a lot. Everybody's fine. My wife sends you her warmest regards.

Shabnam: What does your daughter do now?

Jim: Nicole works at a company now.

Shabnam: How about your wife? Where is she?

Jim: Susan works at a high school. What does your son do?

Shabnam: My son goes to the university.

Jim: His name's Farhad, isn't it?

Shabnam: Yeah. Well, here's the car. Put your suitcase in the back.

Jim: It's so heavy! I'll put my briefcase in the back, too.

Shabnam: Very well. Let's go home.

Comprehension Practice

A. What does this phrase mean? خوش آمدی

1. thanks   2. welcome   3. very well

B. Where does Jim's daughter work?

۱. در یک دبیرستان   ۲. در دانشگاه   ۳. در یک شرکت

C. What does Shabnam's son do?

۱. در یک دبیرستان کار می کنه.   ۲. می ره دانشگاه.   ۳. در یک شرکت کار می کنه.

D. How does Jim say *It's so heavy!* in Farsi?

۱. چقدر سنگینه!   ۲. مواظب باش.   ۳. کیفم رو هم میگذارم عقب.

E. How does Shabnam say *Let's go home* in Farsi?

۱. بسیار خوب.   ۲. این هم ماشین.   ۳. بریم خونه.

2C. VOCABULARY

Remember that the words are alphabetically organized based on the Farsi alphabet and that you should read these tables from right to left. Also note that the irregular Farsi verbs are followed by their present stems in parentheses (see lesson 4).

yeah	/are/	آره
now	/'æl'an/	الآن
university	/daneš-gah/	دانِشگاه
to attend a university/ to go to a university	/danešgah ræftæn/	دانشگاه رفتن

to go (/ro/ is the present stem)	/ræft-æn/ (/ro/)	رَفتَن (رو)
to send regards/ to say hello	/sælam resand-æn/, /sælam resund-æn/	سلام رساندَن، سلام رسوندن
heavy	/sæng-in/	سَنگین
back	/'æqæb/	عقَب
to work (/kon/ is the present stem)	/kar kærd-æn/ (/kon/)	کار کَردَن (کُن)
to put (/gozar/ is the present stem)	/gozašt-æn/ (/gozar/)	گُذاشتَن (گُذار)
no	/næ/	نـه
one, a	/yek/, /ye/	یـک ، یه

2D. KEY PHRASES

niece, nephew (brother's child, sister's child)	/bæradær zade/, /xahær zade/	بَرادَر زادِه، خواهر زادِه
large, great, big, grand	/bozorg/	بُزُرگ
father	/pedær/	پِدَر
grandfather	/pedær bozorg/	پِدَر بزرگ
father-in-law (wife's father), mother-in-law (wife's mother)	/pedær zæn/, /madær zæn/	پِدَر زَن، مادَر زَن
father-in-law (husband's father), mother-in-law (husband's mother)	/pedær šohær/, /madær šohær/	پِدَر شوهَر، مادر شوهر
cousin (mother's brother's son, mother's brother's daughter)	/pesær dayi/, /doxtær dayi/	پِسَر دایی، دُختَر دایی
cousin (mother's sister's son, mother's sister's daughter)	/pesær xale/, /doxtær xale/	پِسَر خاله، دُختَر خاله
aunt (mother's sister)	/xale/	خاله
uncle (mother's brother)	/dayi/	دایی
woman, wife (*infml.*)	/zæn/	زَن
aunt (father's sister)	/'æmme/	عَمه

uncle (father's brother)	/'æmu/	عَمو
mother	/madær/	مادَر
grandmother	/madær bozorg/	مادر بزرگ
grandchild	/næve/	نَوه
spouse	/hæmsær/	هَمسَر

Spelling Note: In most cases, the letters خوا are pronounced /xa/, the letter و being silent. For example, the word خواهر (sister) is pronounced /xahær/.

2E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Farsi Kinship Terms

As you can see in the vocabulary sections above, kinship terms in Farsi are quite descriptive and detailed. Farsi speakers distinguish between relatives on the father's side and those on the mother's side. In particular, where English uses only one word, *cousin,* to describe a group of relatives, Farsi uses eight. You can see four of them in the previous section: پسر دایی (/pesær dayi/), دُختر دایی (/doxtær dayi/), پسر خاله (/pesær xale/), and دُختر خاله (/doxtær xale/). Now try to guess what these terms mean: پسر عمو (/pesær 'æmu/), دُختر عمو (/doxtær 'æmu/), پسر عمه (/pesær 'æmme/), and دُختر عمه (/doxtær 'æmme/). Right! These are the cousins on your father's side, whereas the first four terms refer to the cousins on your mother's side. In-laws each have their own term, too. For example, where English has the single word *father-in-law*, Farsi has two, پدر زن (/pedær zæn/) and پدر شوهر (/pedær šohær/), to refer to wife's father and the husband's father, respectively. What do you think برادر زن (/bæradær zæn/) means? Yes, you guessed it. It means wife's brother, a brother-in-law. But be careful. Order matters. If you switch the order of the words, the meaning changes. زن برادر (/zæn bæradær/) means brother's wife, a sister-in-law.

It should be mentioned that the use of the word زَن to mean *wife* is colloquial and informal. The more formal form is خانُم (/xanom/), as used in lesson 1. Therefore, in all of the above expressions, زَن can be replaced with خانم.

2F. GRAMMAR

Possessive Construction with Possessive Endings

In lesson 1, we talked about the possessive construction in Farsi. We learned that Farsi speakers can say پسرِ من (/pesær-e mæn/) for *my son* or شوهرِ شَبنَم (/šohær-e šæbnæm/) for *Shabnam's husband.* There is a shorter way to form possessive constructions in Farsi if the possessor is mentioned as a pronoun. Look at the following examples.

USE OF POSSESSIVE ENDINGS

my son	/pesær-æm/	پسَرَم	SINGULAR
your (*sg.*) son	/pesær-æt/, /pesær-et/	پسَرَت	
his son/her son	/pesær-æš/, /pesær-eš/	پسَرَش	
our son	/pesær-eman/	پسَرِمان	PLURAL
your (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) son	/pesær-etan/	پسَرِتان	
their son, his son/her (*sg. fml.*) son	/pesær-ešan/	پسَرِشان	

As you can see, in this construction, instead of using the complete personal pronouns من (/mæn/), تو (/to/), او (/u/), ما (/ma/), شما (/šoma/), and آنها (/anha/), we are using their shortened versions, which attach directly to the ends of nouns. These short forms are called *possessive endings* and are listed separately below.

POSSESSIVE ENDINGS

PLURAL			SINGULAR		
our	/-eman/, /-mun/	ـِ مان، ـِ مون	my	/-æm/	ـَ م
your (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*)	/-etan/, /-etun/	ـِ تان، ـِ تون	your (*sg.*)	/-æt/, /-et/	ـَ ت، ـِ ت
their, his/her (*sg. fml.*)	/-ešan/, /-ešun/	ـِ شان، ـِ شون	his/ her/it	/-æš/, /-eš/	ـَ ش، ـِ ش

Note: The second Farsi form represents an informal pronunciation and spelling in each case.

Plurals

The word *building* is a singular noun that has a plural form, *buildings*, referring to more than one building. A noun is a word that typically refers to a person, place, or thing and can be the subject of a sentence. In English, most nouns can be made plural by adding the suffix *-s* or *-es* to

them. There are, however, some exceptions, like *child/children*. We call these exceptional nouns *irregular*. Farsi is similar. Most nouns can be made plural by adding the suffix ها (/ha/) to them. Most nouns referring to human beings can also be made plural by adding the suffix ان (/an/) to them. The irregular plural forms in Farsi usually come from Arabic. Look at the following examples of regular plurals.

SOME NOUNS AND THEIR PLURAL FORMS

PLURAL			SINGULAR		
spouses	/hæmsær-ha/, /hæmsær-an/	همسر ها، همسران	spouse	/hæmsær/	هَمسَر
boys, sons	/pesær-ha/, /pesær-an/	پسر ها، پسران	boy, son	/pesær/	پِسَر
houses	/xane-ha/	خانه ها	house	/xane/	خانه
men	/mærd-ha/, /mærd-an/	مردها، مردان	man	/mærd/	مَرد
bags	/kif-ha/	کیف ها	bag	/kif/	کیف
mothers	/madær-ha/, /madær-an/	مادرها، مادران	mother	/madær/	مادَر

Definite and Indefinite Nouns and را /ra/

A definite noun is a noun that is supposed to be known to both the speaker and the hearer at the time of the conversation; an indefinite noun isn't. For example, when a speaker says, "I met a *man*," the speaker is mentioning the man for the first time and therefore uses the indefinite article *a* before *man*, treating *man* as an indefinite noun. The speaker may then say, "*The man* was my old math teacher." This time, because the speaker has mentioned the man before, *man* is treated as a definite noun and takes the definite article *the* before it. Farsi is similar. An indefinite noun is followed by the indefinite suffix ی. For example, the word مَرد (/mærd/) means *man*, so if you want to say that a man came, you say:

مَردی آمد.
/mærd-i amæd./
A man came.

In written Farsi, definite nouns don't have any markers. In spoken language, a definite noun ends with the definite suffix ـِه (/-e/). For example, in spoken and informal Farsi, *the man* would be مرده (/mærd-e/), but in formal written Farsi, it would just be مرد (/mærd/). Therefore, the sentence *The man came* in spoken Farsi would be:

مَرده اومَد.
/mærd-e umæd./

and in written language it would be:

مَرد آمَد.
/mærd amæd./

Recall that many /a/ sounds turn into /u/ before /m/ and /n/ in spoken Farsi.

If a noun is the object of a sentence (the person or thing that undergoes the action in the sentence), then it must be followed by the object marker, را (/ra/). In written language, using the object marker, را, after indefinite nouns is optional. In spoken language, را is pronounced رو (/ro/). Look at the following examples:

مَردی را/رو می بینَم.
/mærd-i ra/ro mi-bin-æm./
I see a man.

مَرد را می بینَم.
/mærd ra mi-bin-æm./
I see the man. (written)

مَرده رو می بینَم.
/mærd-æ ro mi-bin-æm./
I see the man. (spoken)

Pronunciation Note: /-e/ turns into /-æ/ before /ro/. For instance, in the last example above, مَردِه (/mærd-e/) is pronounced /mærd-æ/ because it precedes را (/ra/).

2G. READING

Read the following passage about Shabnam, her husband, and their friend Jim. Are there any words that you don't recognize? Underline those words and try to guess what they mean.

اسمِ مَن شبنم است. مَن دَر تِهران زندگی می کنم. مَن شوهَر دارَم.
اسمِ شوهرِم مانی است. امروز یکی از دوستانِ قدیمیِ شوهرم
از کانادا به ایران می آیَد. اسمِ او جیم است. جیم در تورنتو
زندگی می کند. او دوستِ خیلی خوبِ ماست.

My name is Shabnam. I live in Tehran. I have a husband. My husband's name is Mani. Today one of my husband's old friends is coming to Iran from Canada. His name is Jim. Jim lives in Toronto. He is a very good friend of ours.

to have /dašt-æn/ (/dar/) داشتَن (دار)

Spelling Note: If the word before the word اَست ends in ا, then we only write ست. For example, instead of writing:

او دوستِ خوبِ ما است.
/u duts-e xub-e ma æst./
He's our good friend.

we write:

او دوستِ خوبِ ماست.

and we say:
/u dust-e xub-e mast./

2H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

As mentioned in Lesson 1, it is important for Farsi speakers to use people's titles when speaking to or about them. The most common titles are these:

professor	/ostad/	اُستاد
Mr.	/aqa-ye/	آقای
Ms., Mrs., Miss	/xanom-e/	خانـُم
Dr., doctor	/doktor/	دُکتـُر
engineer	/mohændes/	مُهَندِس

The most common titles are آقای (/aqa-ye/, Mr.) and خانم (/xanom-e/, Ms.), which can be used before any man's or woman's name. For example, if someone's last name is بَهار (/bæhar/), you can address that person as آقای بهار (/aqa-ye bæhar/) or خانم بهار (/xanom-e bæhar/), depending on whether that person is a man or a woman. استاد (/ostad/, professor, master) is a title given to professors as well as to any skilled craftsperson or artist. مهندس (/mohændes/, engineer) is a title for people who have an engineering degree, and دکتر (/doktor/, doctor) is for people who have a doctorate degree. One can also use آقای or خانم before these titles. For example, if خانم بهار has a doctoral degree, you can refer to her as خانم دکتر بهار (/xanom-e doktor bæhar/, Dr. Ms. Bahar), and if آقای بهار is an engineer, you can call him آقای مهندس بهار (/aqa-ye mohændes bæhar/, Engineer Mr. Bahar).

It's also common in Farsi to address or refer to relatives by naming their relationship to us. For example, one might refer to his or her uncle or aunt as عمو مانی (/æmu mani/, Uncle Mani) or خاله شبنم (/xale šæbnæm/, Aunt Shabnam).

If you know someone well or want to refer to someone you love, you can say the person's name and follow it with the word **جان** (/jan/). For instance, **مانی جان** or **شبنم جان** can roughly be translated as *dear Mani* and *dear Shabnam*, but it's not quite as formal as "dear" sounds in English. You usually use **جان** in an informal conversation, not as the opening of a letter.

Exercises

A. Use the short version of possessive pronouns in the following phrases.

۱. چَمِدانِ مَن: ________.	۲. ماشینِ او: ________.
۳. حالِ شُما: ________.	٤. پِدَرِ آنها: ________.
٥. دُختَرِ ما: ________.	٦. مادَرِ تو: ________.

B. Fill in the blanks using the words given. There are more words in the list than required. This is a vocabulary exercise, so you need to make sure that your selections yield meaningful sentences.

را   چه   چَمِدان   شِرکَت   چَمِدان ها   می گُذارَم   آقای

۱. ________ در ماشین هستند.

۲. یک ________ در ماشین است.

۳. ماشینی ________ می بینم.

٤. پدرتان ________ کار می کنند؟

٥. کیفم را ________ عقب.

٦. پسرم در یک ________ کار می کند.

C. For each of the items below, use the words in parentheses to make two sentences, one with a singular indefinite object on the line labeled **الف** and one with a plural definite object on the line labeled **ب**. Follow the example.

(کیف، می بینم):

الف. کیفی را می بینم.

ب. کیف ها را می بینم.

۱. (ماشین، می بینم)

الف. ________.

ب. ________.

۲. (چمدان، می گذارم عقب)

الف. ________.

ب. ________.

۳. (دختر، می بیند)

الف. ________.

ب. ________.

D. Conjugate the present tense form of the verb دیدن (/didæn/, to see). Recall that the present stem of the verb دیدن is بین (/bin/, see). Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb. The first one is done for you.

۱. من می بینم.	٤. ما ________.
۲. تو ________.	٥. شما ________.
۳. او ________.	٦. آنها ________.

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 2. B. 3. C. 2. D. 1. E. 3

Exercises

A.

۱. چمدانم ۲. ماشینش or ماشینشان ۳. حالتان

٤. پدرشان ٥. دخترمان ٦. مادرت

B.

۱. چمدان ها ۲. چمدان ۳. را ٤. چه ٥. می گذارم

٦. شرکت

C.

۱. الف. ماشینی را می بینم.

ب. ماشین ها را می بینم.

۲. الف. چمدانی را می گذارم عقب.

ب. چمدان ها را می گذارم عقب.

۳. الف. دختری را می بیند.

ب. دختر ها را می بیند.

D.

۲. می بینی ۳. می بیند ٤. می بینیم ٥. می بینید ٦. می بینند

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Refer to the reading passage in this lesson about Shabnam and her family. Then take your language journal and try to write a similar paragraph in Farsi about your own family. Be patient and creative, and try to include as many family members as you can in your paragraph. Alternatively, you may draw your family tree and write each person's name beside his or her relationship to you.

LESSON 3

Where Is My Room?

In this lesson, we will learn some names of rooms, some basic objects, and colors. We also go over yes/no questions, demonstratives, and adjectives, and work a little with numbers.

3A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

bedroom	/otaq xab/	اُتاق خواب
kitchen	/aš-pæz-xane/, /aš-pæz-xune/	آشپزخانه، آشپزخونه
there	/an-ja/, /un-ja/	آنجا، اونجا
here	/in-ja/	اینجا
After you, Here you are.	/befærma-yid/, /befærma-yin/	بِفَرمایید، بفرمایین
how many	/čænd ta/	چَند تا
bathroom	/hæmmam/, /hæmum/	حَمام، حموم
restroom	/dæst-šu-yi/	دَستشویی
upstairs, downstairs	/tæbæqe-ye bala/, /tæbæqe-ye payin/	طَبَقه یِ، بالا/پایین
pretty	/qæšæng/	قَشَنگ

3B. DIALOGUE

Shabnam and Jim have arrived home. Jim will stay at the Payamis's house during his visit. Listen to their conversation as Shabnam shows Jim around the house.

شبنم: خوب. این هم خونه ی ما.بفرمایین (بفرمایید).

/šæbnæm/: /xob. in hæm xune-ye ma. befærmayin (befærmayid)./

خونه ی قشنگی دارین (دارید). چند تا اتاق خواب داره (دارد)؟	جیم:
/xune-ye qæšæng-i dar-in (dar-id). čænd ta otaq xab dar-e (dar-æd)?/	:/jim/
سه تا. اتاق خواب ها طبقه ی بالا هستن.	شبنم:
/se ta. otaq xab-ha bala hæst-æn./	:/šæbnæm/
طبقه ی پایین چی دارین؟	جیم:
/tæbæqe-ye payin či dar-in?/	:/jim/
دستِ راست دستشوییه. اینجا هم هال و سالن پذیراییه.	شبنم:
/dæst-e rast dæst-šu-yi-e. inja hæm hal o salon-e pæzira-yi-ye./	:/šæbnæm/
آشپزخونه کجاست؟	جیم:
/aš-pæz-xune koja-st?/	:/jim/
دستِ چپ. روبرو هم سالن ناهارخوریه.	شبنم:
/dæst-e čæp. ru-be-ru hæm salon-e nahar-xor-i-ye./	:/šæbnæm/
حموم کجاست؟	جیم:
/hæmmum koja-st?/	:/jim/
طبقه ی بالا، آخر راهرو.	شبنم:
/tæbæqe-ye bala, axær-e rah-ro./	:/šæbnæm/
مَن کُجا می خوابَم؟	جیم:
/mæn koja mi-xab-æm?/	:/jim/
این اتاق مالِ شماست.	شبنم:
/in otaq mal-e šoma-st./	:/šæbnæm/
اتاق بُزُرگیه!	جیم:
/otaq-e bozorg-i-ye!/	:/jim/
بله. منظره ی زیبایی هم داره. پنجره اون طرفه.	شبنم:
/bæle. mænzare-ye ziba-yi hæm dar-e. pænjere un tæræf-e./	:/šæbnæm/

Shabnam: Well, this is our house. After you.

Jim: You have a pretty house. How many bedrooms does it have?

Shabnam:	Three. The bedrooms are upstairs.
Jim:	What do you have downstairs?
Shabnam:	There is the restroom on the right. And here are the living room and the reception room.
Jim:	Where's the kitchen?
Shabnam:	On the left. And the dining room is in front.
Jim:	Where's the bathroom?
Shabnam:	Upstairs, at the end of the corridor.
Jim:	Where do I sleep?
Shabnam:	This room is yours.
Jim:	It's a large room!
Shabnam:	Yes. It has a beautiful view, too. The window is on that side.

Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based the above dialogue.

A. Where are the bedrooms?

۱. طبقه ی بالا ۲. طبقه ی پایین ۳. دستِ چپ

B. When Jim wants to know where he sleeps, what does he ask?

۱. چند تا اتاق خواب داره؟ ۲. حمام کجاست؟ ۳. مَن کُجا می خوابَم؟

C. How does Shabnam say *on the right*?

۱. دستِ چپ ۲. دستِ راست ۳. روبرو

D. Where is the bathroom in Shabnam's house?

۱. طبقه ی پایین، دستِ راست ۲. طبقه ی بالا، آخر راهرو ۳. روبرو

E. How does Jim say that his room is large?

۱. اتاقِ بزرگیه! ۲. این اتاق مالِ شماست. ۳. منظره ی زیبایی داره!

3C. VOCABULARY

room	/otaq/	اُتاق
end	/axær/	آخر

that	/an/, /un/	آن ،اون
this	/in/	این
window	/pænjere/	پَنجِره
to have (/dar/ is the present stem)	/dašt-æn/ (/dar/)	داشتَن (دار)
you have	/dar-id/, /dar-in/	دارید ، دارین
he/she/it has	/dar-æd/, /dar-e/	دارَد ، داره
(on the) left	/dæst-e čæp/	دستِ چپ
(on the) right	/dæst-e rast/	دستِ راست
corridor	/rahro/	راهرو
beautiful	/ziba/	زیبا
reception room	/salon-e pæzir-a-yi/	سالُنِ پَذیرایی
dining room	/salon-e nahar xori/, /otaq-e nahar xori/	سالن/اتاق ناهارخوری
side	/tæræf/	طَرَف
yours	/mal-e šoma/	مالِ شما
view	/mænzære/	مَنظَره
hall, living room	/hal/	هال

Now concentrate on some additional key phrases related to the topic of the lesson.

3D. KEY PHRASES

apartment	/aparteman/	آپارتِمان
stove	/ojaq/	اُجاق
pillow	/baleš/	بالِش
blanket	/pætu/	پَتو
bed	/tæxt/, /tæxt-e xab/	تَخت، تَختِ خواب
mattress	/tošæk/	تُشَک
toilet	/tovalet/	تُوالِت
light, lamp	/čeraq/	چِراغ
yard	/hæyat/	حَیاط
door	/dær/	دَر

building	/saxt-eman/	ساختِمان
chair	/sændæli/	صَندَلی
kitchen cabinet	/kabinet-e ašpæz xane/	کابینتِ آشپَزخانه
furniture	/lævazem-e mænzel/, /æsas-e mænzel/, /æsas-e xane/	لوازمِ مَنزل، آثاثِ منزل/خانه
dishwasher	/mašin-e zærf šuyi/	ماشینِ ظَرف شویی
washing machine	/mašin-e lebas šuyi/	ماشینِ لِباس شویی
sheet	/mælafe, mælhæfe/	مَلافه، مَلحَفه
home, domicile	/mænzel/	مَنزل
table	/miz/	میز
dining table	/miz-e nahar xori/	میز ناهارخوری

3E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

About the Persian Home

Iranians revere elders and guests. When going through a door, for example, they always stop and let guests or elders go through first. Men also give way to women. The term that is equivalent to *after you* in Farsi and is used in a situation like this is بِفَرمایید (/be-færma-yid/). When two people are entering a house or a room, you will probably often see both of them stop and say بفرمایید to the other. Elders also say this out of politeness to younger persons. When entering a home with a guest, Iranians usually open the door for the guest and let their guest enter first.

Most Iranians cover the floors of their homes with hand-knotted Persian rugs, which they like to keep very clean, so be prepared to take off your shoes when entering an Iranian home. Iranians usually keep slippers around for entering bathrooms and kitchens.

In most houses, people receive their guests in a special great room or area called اتاقِ پذیرایی (/otaq-e pæzir-a-yi/, reception room), سالُنِ پَذیرایی (/salon-e pæzir-a-yi/, reception hall), or simply پَذیرایی (/pæzir-a-yi/, reception), where everybody sits on the nicest chairs in the house. This is different from a living room, which is called اتاقِ نِشیمَن (/otaq-e neš-imæn/). The reception room is reserved for receiving guests, and the living room is for the family and casual gatherings. In some traditional or rural places, everybody sits on the floor, which is usually covered with hand-woven Persian rugs, too.

3F. GRAMMAR

Yes/No Questions

Yes/no questions are those that require a *yes* or *no* answer. These questions are the easiest to make in Farsi. In spoken language, you can make a yes/no question by changing only the *intonation* (melody) of the sentence. A statement in Farsi ends with a falling intonation (i.e., you lower your pitch at the end of the sentence), but a yes/no question ends with a rising intonation (i.e., you end the sentence with a higher tone). Look at the following examples:

آشپزخانه اینجاست.
/ašpæz-xane inja-st./
Here is the kitchen.

آشپزخانه اینجاست؟
/ašpæz-xane inja-st?/
Is the kitchen here?

اتاقِ من طبقه ی بالاست.
/otaq-e mæn tæbæqe-ye bala-st./
My room is upstairs.

اتاقِ من طبقه ی بالاست؟
/otaq-e mæn tæbæqe-ye bala-st?/
Is my room upstairs?

In written or formal language, you should add the question particle, آیا (/aya/), to the beginning of the sentence in addition to using the rising intonation. Look at the following examples:

خانه ی شما آنجاست.
/xane-ye šoma anja-st./
Your house is there.

آیا خانه ی شما آنجاست؟
/aya xane-ye šoma anja-st?/
Is your house there?

شما ایرانی هستید.
/šoma iran-i hæst-id./
You are Iranian.

آیا شما ایرانی هستید؟
/aya šoma iran-i hæst-id?/
Are you Iranian?

The only difference between these questions and the previous set of questions is that the latter are formal and are used in writing.

Questions Using Question Words

Questions with question words are those that cannot be answered with *yes* or *no*. In English, most of these questions start with a word like *what, who, why, where, when,* or *how*. Unlike English, question words in Farsi don't have to come at the beginning of the sentence. They can appear where the answer would appear in a statement, at the end of the sentence.

سالنِ ناهارخوری کجاست؟
/salon-e nahar-xor-i koja-st?/
Where is the dining room?

سالنِ ناهارخوری اینجاست.
/salon-e nahar-xor-i inja-st./
The dining room is here.

دستشویی کجاست؟
/dæst-šu-yi koja-st?/
Where is the restroom?

دستشویی دستِ راست است. or دستشویی دستِ راسته.
/dæst-šu-yi dæst-e rast æst./ or /dæst šu-yi dæst-e rast-e./
The restroom is on the right.

این چیست؟ or این چیه؟
/in či-st?/ or /in či-ye?/
What is this?

این میز ناهارخوریست. or این میز ناهارخوریه.
/in miz-e nahar-xor-i-st./ or /in miz-e nahar-xor-i-ye./
This is the/a dining table.

آنها چه هستند؟ or اونهاچی اند؟
/an-ha če hæst-ænd?/ or /un-ha či-ænd?/
What are they?

آنها صندلی هستند. or اونها صندلی اند.
/an-ha sændæli hæst-ænd./ or /un-ha sændali-ænd./
They are chairs.

حال شما چطور است؟ or حالِ شما چطوره؟
/hal-e šoma če-tor æst/ or /hal-e šoma če-tor-e?/
How are you?

حال من خوب است. or حالِ من خوبه.
/hal-e mæn xub æst./ or /hal-e mæn xub-e./
I'm fine.

Adjectives

Adjectives are words that modify nouns. They are words like *big, small,* and *round* that help describe the properties of objects. In English, adjectives precede the noun they modify. Farsi is the opposite. Like possessive adjectives, other adjectives in Farsi follow the noun

they are modifying, and they are linked together and to the noun with the vowel ـِ (/e/). For example, *a large room* in Farsi is

یک اتاقِ بزرگ
/yek otaq-e bozorg/.

When the preceding word ends in a vowel (e.g., **خانه** /xane/), then /-e/ appears as یِ (/ye/). For instance, *a beautiful house* in Farsi is

یک خانه یِ زیبا
/yek xane-ye ziba/,

and *a beautiful big house* is

یک خانه یِ بزرگِ زیبا
/yek xane-ye bozorg-e ziba/.

The ordering of adjectives is not fixed in Farsi. Therefore, when there is more than one adjective present, they can be ordered in a number of different ways.

Numerals and Partitives

Like adjectives, numerals can modify nouns. For example, instead of just talking about one table, we can mention two, three, or more tables. In Farsi, numerals come at the beginning of a noun phrase, just like in English.

NUMBERS 0–10

zero	/sefr/	صِفر	٠
one	/yek/	یِک	١
two	/do/	دُو	٢
three	/se/	سِه	٣
four	/čæhar/, /čahar/	چَهار	٤
five	/pænj/	پَنج	٥
six	/šeš/	شِش	٦
seven	/hæft/	هَفت	٧
eight	/hæšt/	هَشت	٨
nine	/noh/	نُه	٩
ten	/dæh/	دَه	١٠

Note: Numerals in Farsi are written from *left to right*, just like in English; therefore, 10 is written as ١٠. When talking about more than one of any

object, Farsi speakers say the number and then mention the object. For example, *three tables* is سه میز (/se miz/). Notice that, unlike in English, you don't have to pluralize the noun after a number larger than one; that is, you say:

یک میز
/yek miz/
one table

and

سه میز
/se miz/
three tables

and **not**

سه میزها
/se miz-ha/.

Often, after the numeral, Farsi speakers use the word عَدَد (/ædæd/) or تا (/ta/) as a counting unit for the object they are mentioning. For instance,

سه عدد میز
/se ædæd miz/

and

سه تا میز
/se ta miz/

both mean *three tables*, but literally they could be translated as three units of table. The word تا is informal, and عدد is more formal. The following is a summary of all this.

یک کِتاب
/yek ketab/
one/a book

دو کِتاب
/do ketab/
two books

دو تا کِتاب
/do ta ketab/
two books (*infml.*)

دو عَدَد کِتاب
/do ædæd ketab/
two books (*fml.*)

Note: عدد (/ædæd/) is only used for non-living objects and not for people, animals, or plants.

Partitives are expressions that contain *one of, two of, part of, some of*, or the like. In Farsi, they are constructed as follows:

PARTITIVES

part of	/bæxš-i æz/	بخشی از
a number of	/te'dad-i æz/	تعدادی از
a few of	/čænd ta æz/	چند تا از
two of	/do ta æz/	دو تا (عدد) از
some of	/qædr-i æz/	قدری از
a little of	/kæm-i æz/	کمی از
one of	/yek-i æz/	یکی از

Study the following examples:

یکی از اتاق ها اینجاست.
/yek-i æz otaq-ha in-ja-st./
One of the rooms is here.

دو تا از میز ها بالا هستند.
/do ta æz miz-ha bala hæst-ænd./
Two of the tables are upstairs.

چند تا از آپارتمان ها بزرگ هستند.
/čænd ta æz aparteman-ha bozorg hæst-ænd./
Some (a number) of the apartments are large.

تعدادی از ساختمان ها را می بینیم.
/te'dad-i æz saxt-eman-ha ra mi-bin-im./
We see a few of the buildings.

بخشی از خانه تاریک است.
/bæxš-i æz xan-e tarik æst./
Part of the house is dark.

Vocabulary Note: تاریک (/tarik/) means *dark*.

3G. READING

Read the following passage about Shabnam and Mani's house.

شبنم و مانی یک خانه یِ زیبا دارند. خانه یِ آنها دو طبقه و سه اتاق خواب دارد. دستشویی، هال، سالن پذیرایی، سالن ناهارخوری و آشپزخانه در طبقه ی پایین هستند. یک میزِ ناهارخوریِ بزرگ در سالن ناهارخوریست. لوازمِ منزلِ شبنم و مانی خیلی قشنگ هستند. اتاق خواب ها در طبقه ی بالا هستند. حمام در آخرِ راهرو است. اتاقِ جیم منظره ی زیبایی دارد. خانه ی شبنم و مانی یک حیاط هم دارد.

Shabnam and Mani have a beautiful house. Their house has two floors and three bedrooms. The restroom, living room, reception room, dining room, and kitchen are downstairs. There is a large dining table in the dining room. Shabnam and Mani's furniture is very pretty. The bedrooms are upstairs. The bathroom is at the end of the corridor. Jim's room has a beautiful view. Shabnam and Mani's house has a yard, too.

3H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Architecture in Iran

There is archaeological evidence that architecture and urban planning date back ten thousand years in Persia. Persians, who used mathematics and geometry in architecture, had a great and widespread architectural influence on the ancient world. The two original designers of the city of Baghdad, for instance, were both Persian. Iran is among the top ten nations in the world in terms of its number of ancient architectural sites and has been labeled one of the "cradles of civilization" by the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO).

Exercises

A. Make questions using the question markers or question words given. Two are done for you as examples.

Examples:

(دستشویی، کجا): دستشویی کجاست؟

(اتاق ها، اینجا): (آیا) اتاق ها اینجا هستند؟

۱. (صندلی ها، کجا): ________؟

۲. (میز ناهارخوری، اینجا): ________؟
۳. (این، چی): ________؟
٤. (آنها، چی): ________؟
٥. (اتاق خواب ها، کجا): ________؟
٦. (حمام، اینجا): ________؟
۷. (میزها، در سالن پذیرایی): ________؟

B. Change the second sentence in the example below using the phrase given in parentheses. The first one is done as an example.

Examples:

این اتاقِ قشنگ مالِ شبنم است.
(آن): آن اتاقِ قشنگ مالِ شبنم است.
۱. (زیبا): ________.
۲. (جیم): ________.
۳. (میز): ________.
٤. (بلند): ________.
٥. (شما): ________.
٦. (کهنه): ________.
۷. (صندلی): ________.

C. Write these numerals in words.

۱. ______ ۲. ______ ۳. ______ ٤. ______ ٥. ______
٦. ______ ۷. ______ ۸. ______ ۹. ______ ۱۰. ______

D. How would you say these sentences in Farsi?

1. Two of the girls are here.

____

2. A number of the chairs are old.

____

3. A few of the rooms are dark.

____

4. Part of the building is new.

____

5. Three of the tables are large.

____

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 1 B. 3 C. 2 D. 2 E. 1

Exercises

A.

۱. صندلی ها کجا هستند؟
۲. (آیا) میز ناهارخوری اینجاست؟
۳. این چیست؟ or این چیه؟
٤. آنها چیستند؟ or اونها چیَند؟
٥. اتاق خواب ها کجا هستند؟
٦. (آیا) حمام اینجاست؟
۷. (آیا) میز ها در سالن پذیرایی هستند؟

B.

۱. آن اتاقِ زیبا مالِ شبنم است.
۲. آن اتاقِ زیبا مالِ جیم است.
۳. آن میزِ زیبا مالِ جیم است.
٤. آن میزِ بلند مالِ جیم است.
٥. آن میزِ بلند مالِ شماست.
٦. آن میزِ کهنه مالِ شماست.
۷. آن صندلیِ کهنه مالِ شماست.

C.

۱. یِک ۲. دُو ۳. سِه ٤. چِهار ٥. پَنج
٦. شِش ۷. هَفت ۸. هَشت ۹. نُه ۱۰. دَه

D.

۱. دو تا از دختر ها اینجا هستند.
۲. تعدادی از صندلی ها کهنه هستند.
۳. چند تا از اتاق ها تاریک هستند.
٤. بخشی از ساختمان نو است.
٥. سه تا از میزها بزرگ هستند.

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Draw a floorplan of your home in your language journal, and label all the rooms in Farsi.

LESSON

4

What's He Doing?

In this lesson you will learn about daily routines, some verb forms, the present progressive tense, and how to tell time. You will also learn a little bit about Mani and how he spends his days. But first, let's warm up a little.

4A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

my dear	/'æziz-æm/	عَزیزَم
What time is it?	/sa'æt čænd-e?/	ساعَت چَنده؟
It's eight o'clock.	/sa'æt hæšt-e./	ساعَت هَشته.
What are you doing?	/če kar dar-i mi-kon-i?/	چه کار داری مَی کنی؟
to make tea	/čay dorost kærd-æn/	چای دُرُست کردن
to have breakfast	/sobh-ane xord-æn/	صبحانه خوردن (خور)

4B. DIALOGUE

It's the morning after Jim has arrived in Tehran. Shabnam is in the kitchen as Mani walks in. Listen to them talking about Jim and Farhad.

شبنم: صُبح بِخِیر!

/šæbnæm/: /sobh be-xeyr!/

مانی: سَلام، عَزیزَم. ساعَت چَنده؟

/mani/: /sælam, æziz-æm. sa'æt čænd-e?/

شبنم: ساعت هَشته. جیم کُجاست؟

/šæbnæm/: /sa'æt hæšt-e. jim koja-st?/

مانی: جیم داره دوش می گیره (دارد دوش میگیرد).
چه کار داری می کُنی؟

:/mani/	/jim dar-e (dar-æd) duš mi-gir-e (mi-gir-æd). če kar dar-i mi-kon-i?/
شبنم:	دارَم چای دُرُست می کُنَم. می خوری؟
:/šæbnæm/	/dar-æm čay dorost mi-kon-æm. mi-xor-i?/
مانی:	الآن نـه، مَمنون. می خوام (می خواهم) با جیم صُبحانه بخورم.
:/mani/	/æl'an næ, mæmnun. mi-xa-m (mi-xah-am) ba jim sobh-ane be-xor-æm./
شبنم:	فَرهاد چِه کار می کُنِه؟
:/šæbnæm/	/færhad če kar mi-kon-e?/
مانی:	تو دَستشوییه. داره مِسواک می زَنِه (دارد مسواک می زند).
:/mani/	/tu dæst-šu-yi-ye. dar-e (dar-æd) mesvak mi-zæn-e (mi-zæn-æd)./
شبنم:	چه ساعَتی کِلاس داره؟
:/šæbnæm	/če sa'æti kelas dar-e?/
مانی:	ساعَتِ دَه و نیم.
:/mani/	/sa'æt-e dæh o nim./
شبنم:	این هَم جیم. داره میاد (دارد میاید).
:/šæbnæm/	/šin hæm jim. dar-e mi-yad (mi-ay-ad)./

Note: The word تو here is pronounced /tu/, and it's a preposition meaning *in* that is used in spoken Farsi. It is spelled the same as the second person singular pronoun تو (/to/, you), but they are two completely different words.

Shabnam:	Good morning!
Mani:	Hello, my dear. What time is it?
Shabnam:	It's eight o'clock. Where's Jim?
Mani:	Jim is taking a shower. What are you doing?
Shabnam:	I'm making tea. Would you like some? (*Lit.*, Do you eat?)
Mani:	Not now, thanks. I want to have breakfast with Jim.
Shabnam:	What's Farhad doing?
Mani:	He's in the restroom. He's brushing his teeth.

Shabnam:	What time does he have class?
Mani:	At half past ten.
Shabnam:	Here's Jim. He's coming.

Comprehension Practice

Answer the following questions based on the dialogue that you just heard.

A. At what time is the conversation between Shabnam and Mani taking place?

۱. ساعَتِ هَشت ۲. ساعَتِ دَه ۳. ساعَتِ دَه و نیم

B. What is Jim doing?

۱. جیم داره چای دُرُست می کُنه. ۲. جیم داره دوش می گیره. ۳. جیم دارِه مِسواک می زَنه.

C. What does Mani say when Shabnam asks him if he wants some tea?

۱. الآن نه، خیلی ۲. جیم داره دوش می گیره. ۳. فرهاد داره مسواک می زنه.

D. Where is Farhad?

۱. تو دستشوییه. ۲. تو حمامه. ۳. تو آشپزخانه است.

E. When Shabnam sees Jim coming, what does she say?

۱. جیم داره مسواک می زنه. ۲. جیم داره میاد. ۳. جیم داره چای می خوره.

4C. VOCABULARY

tea	/čay/	چای
to want (want)	/xast-æn/ (/xah/)	خواستن (خواه)
to eat (eat) (*colloq., also* to drink)	/xord-æn/ (/xor/)	خوردَن (خور)
to have (present progressive marker) (have)	/dašt-æn/ (/dar/)	داشتن (دار)
clock, watch	/sa'æt/	ساعَت
morning	/sobh/	صُبح
breakfast	/sobhane/	صُبحانه
dear	/'æziz/	عَزیز
toothbrush	/mesvak/	مِسواک

lunch	/nahar/	ناهار

4D. KEY PHRASES

news	/æxbar/	آخبار
to wake up (*lit.*, to rise from sleep) (become)	/æz xab bolænd šod-æn/ (/šo/)	اِز خواب بُلند شُدن (شو)
to go to work	/(be) sær-e kar ræft-æn/	(به) سَرِ کار رَفتَن
to shave	/tæraš-id-æn/	تَراشیدن
television	/televiziyun/	تِلویزیون
to watch	/tæmaša kærd-æn/	تماشا کردن
to have tea, to drink tea	/čay nuš-id-æn/, /čay xord-æn/	چای نوشیدن/خوردن
to take a bath	/hæmmam kærd-æn/, /hæmmam gereft-æn/	حمام کردن/گرفتن
dry	/xošk/	خُشک
to dry	/xošk kærd-æn/	خُشک کردن
to sleep	/xab-id-æn/	خوابیدن
to read (read)	/xand-æn/ (/xan/)	خواندَن (خوان)
hand	/dæst/	دَست
shower	/duš/	دوش
to take a shower	/duš gereft-æn/	دوش گرفتن
newspaper	/ruzname/	روزنامه
dinner	/šam/	شام
to have dinner	/šam xord-æn/	شام خوردن
night	/šæb/	شَب
to wash	/šost-æn/	شُستن
to have breakfast	/sobhane xord-æn/	صبحانه خوردن
face	/suræt/	صورَت
to shave (one's face)	/suræt tærašid-æn/	صورت تراشیدن
noon	/zohr/	ظُهر
afternoon	/'æsr/	عَصر

to brush (one's teeth)	/mesvak kærd-æn/, /mesvak zæd-æn/	مِسواک کردن/زَدَن
to have lunch	/nahar xord-æn/	ناهار خوردن
to look, to watch	/negah kærd-æn/	نگاه کردن
to drink	/nušid-æn/	نوشیدن
every day	/hær ruz/	هَر روز

4E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Affinity Expressions

Farsi is full of idioms expressing contentment, or one's love or fondness for another. We've already seen a couple of those—جان (/jan/, dear), as in شبنم جان (/šæbnæm jan/), and عزیزم (/æziz-æm/, my dear/my darling). If you're around Farsi speakers a lot, you probably hear expressions like قُربانِت بِرَم (/qorban-et be-r-æm/) and قُربانِ شُما بِرَم (/qorban-e šoma be-r-æm/). These expressions, if translated literally, mean something close to *May I get sacrificed for you,* which may sound a little extreme. These are very old expressions, and nobody really means them that way. Their use, depending on the situation, has a wide range of meanings, from a simple greeting to an expression of deep love. If a person says to an acquaintance, at the beginning or end of a conversation, قُربانِ شُما بِرَم (/qorban-e šoma be-r-æm/), and mixes it with the rest of his or her greetings, the expression will simply serve the same purpose as *Nice to see you* does in English. But if a parent walks by his or her child, who is doing or saying something cute, and says to the child in a loving tone, قُربونِت بِرَم (/qorbun-et be-r-æm/), then that expression serves the same purpose as *I love you* does in English.

Another very common Farsi term is بَه بَه (/bæh bæh/). This is a general term of contentment. If you walk into the kitchen and smell the appetizing scent of a home-cooked meal and you're hungry, you might say به به (/bæh bæh/) or sometimes just a single بَه (/bæh/). If you go outside in the morning and feel the fresh air, you're likely to do the same. If you see someone you like and you are happy to see that person, you will also say به به, and so on. This term is very widely used to express that you like what you see, hear, smell, touch, or taste.

4F. GRAMMAR

Verb Forms

The Farsi verb comes in several forms indicating different *tenses, aspects,* and *moods.* The tense of a verb corresponds to the time of the action (i.e., past, present, or future). The aspect of a verb refers to the completeness or incompleteness of the action. For example, *I am reading this book* is in the

progressive aspect, meaning that it refers to an action that is in progress, whereas *I have read this book* is in the *perfect aspect*, meaning that it refers to a completed action. *I read the paper every day* is in the *habitual aspect* because it refers to an action that habitually takes place. In this lesson we look at the present, past, and infinitival forms of verbs.

All verbs in Farsi have a stem, and all of the different verb forms are made by adding prefixes and suffixes to the stem. For example, the stem of *jump* is پَر (/pær/). You can change this stem into the past tense by adding the suffix ـید (/-id/) to it. (Note the resemblance to the English -ed.) *Jumped* in Farsi is then پَرید (/pær-id/).

In lesson 1, we talked about the present tense. Let's look at it again. We said that present habitual is made with می (/mi-/) plus the present stem of the verb (e.g., پَر /pær/, jump) and the personal endings.

THE VERB پَریدَن (/pær-id-æn/, to jump) IN THE HABITUAL PRESENT TENSE

I jump	/mi-pær-æm/	می پَرَم	1st person	SINGULAR
you (sg.) jump	/mi-pær-i/	می پَری	2nd person	
he/she/it jumps	/mi-pær-æd/	می پَرَد	3rd person	
we jump	/mi-pær-im/	می پَریم	1st person	PLURAL
you (pl.) jump	/mi-pær-id/	می پَرید	2nd person	
they jump	/mi-pær-ænd/	می پَرَند	3rd person	

THE PAST STEM

As explained before, past verbs are made by adding the suffix ـید (/-id/) to the end of the present stem in a manner similar to the English formation of *jumped* from *jump*. Also as in English and in other languages, Farsi has a number of irregular verbs, which don't follow this nice and simple general rule. What's the past tense form of *do* in English? It's *did*, not *doed*. In Farsi, too, the past tense of کُن (/kon/, do) is irregular. It's کَرد (/kærd/, did). Here are some examples of regular and irregular verb stems.

REGULAR PRESENT AND PAST VERB STEMS

PAST			PRESENT		
jumped	/pær-id/	پَرید	jump	/pær/	پَر
bought	/xær-id /	خَرید	buy	/xær/	خَر
ran	/dæv-id/	دَوید	run	/do/	دُو
grew	/ruy-id/	رویید	grow	/ruy/	روی
rubbed	/mal-id /	مالید	rub	/mal/	مال

Note: The pronunciation of دو changes from /do/ in the present tense to /dæv/ in the past tense in formal language. In colloquial speech, دوید (/dæv-id/) is pronounced /do-id/.

IRREGULAR PRESENT AND PAST VERB STEMS

PAST			PRESENT		
went	/ræft/	رَفت	go	/ro/	رو
had	/dašt/	داشت	have	/dar/	دار
became	/šod/	شُد	become	/šo/	شُو
did	/kærd/	کَرد	do	/kon/	کُن
said	/goft/	گُفت	say	/gu/	گو

It is interesting to see that all of these Farsi irregular verbs are also irregular in English.

INFINITIVE

The infinitive form of the verb, like *to jump* or *to do,* is made with the past stem of the verb plus the suffix ـَن (/-æn/). Therefore, *to jump* would be پَریدَن (/pær-id-æn/). Here is a list of the infinitive forms of the verbs mentioned above.

SOME INFINITIVES

to jump	/pær-id-æn/	پَریدَن
to buy	/xær-id-æn/	خَریدَن
to have	/dašt-æn/	داشتَن
to run	/dæv-id-æn/	دَویدَن
to go	/ræft-æn/	رَفتَن
to become	/šod-æn/	شُدَن
to do	/dærd-æn/	کَردَن
to say	/goft-æn/	گُفتَن
to rub	/mal-id-æn/	مالیدَن

Note: In the vocabulary lists and the glossary, the present stems of irregular verbs are provided in parentheses beside the infinitive form of the verb so that you know you are dealing with an irregular verb and can learn its present stem form.

PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

As mentioned above, the progressive aspect refers to an action or process in progress. The present progressive is used to talk about an action that is in progress at the time of speaking. The present progressive in spoken Farsi is made with the present form of the auxiliary verb داشتَن (/dašt-æn/) plus the present habitual form of the main verb. Both the auxiliary verb داشتَن and the main verb inflect for tense and person. See the following example:

دارَم می خورَم
/dar-æm mi-xor-æm/
I am eating/I am having

داری می خوری
/dar-i mi-xor-i/
you are eating/you are having

دارَد می خورَد / داره می خوره
/dar-æd mi-xor-æd/, /dar-e mi-xor-e/
he/she/it is eating; he/she/it is having

داریم می خوریم
/dar-im mi-xor-im/
we are eating/we are having

دارید می خورید/ دارین می خورین
/dar-id mi-xor-id/, /dar-in mi-xor-in/
you (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) are eating/you (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) are having

دارَند می خورَند/ دارن می خورن
/dar-ænd mi-xor-ænd/, /dar-æn mi-xor-æn/
they (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) are eating/they (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) are having

Notice that the verb خوردن means both *to eat* and *to have*, as in *to have breakfast* or *to have some tea*. In the beginning dialogue of this lesson, we hear Shabnam say

دارَم چای دُرُست می کُنم.
/dar-æm čay dorost mi-kon-æm./
I am making tea.

Let's conjugate the compound verb دُرُست کَردَن (/dorost kærd-æn/, to make) with the object چای (/čay/, tea). Recall that we can drop the subject in Farsi; therefore, all of the following forms are also complete sentences in Farsi.

THE VERB چای دُرُست کَردَن (/čay dorost kærd-æn/, to make tea) IN THE PRESENT PROGRESSIVE

I am making tea.	/čay dar-æm dorost mi-kon-æm./	چای دارَم درست می کنم.
You (*sg.*) are making tea.	/čay dar-i dorost mi-kon-i./	چای داری درست می کنی.
He/She is making tea.	/čay dar-æd dorost mi-kon-æd./, /čay dar-e dorost mi-kon-e./	چای دارد درست می کند. / چای داره درست می کنه.
We are making tea.	/čay dar-im dorost mi-kon-im./	چای داریم درست می کنیم.
You (*pl.*) are making tea.	/čay dar-id dorost mi-kon-id./, /čay dar-in dorost mi-kon-in./	چای دارید درست می کنید. / چای دارین درست می کنین.
They are making tea.	/čay dar-ænd dorost mi-kon-ænd./, /čay dar-æn dorost mi -kon-æn./	چای دارند درست می کنند./ چای دارن درست می کنن.

Note: In this sentence, the object may also appear between the auxiliary verb, داشتن (/dašt-æn/), and the main verb, درست کردن (/dorost kærd-æn/), as in the following example:

Numbers 11–20

The numbers eleven through twenty in Farsi are as follows:

NUMBERS 11–20

eleven	/yazdæh/	یازدَه	۱۱
twelve	/dævazdæh/	دَوازدَه	۱۲
thirteen	/sizdæh/	سیزدَه	۱۳
fourteen	/čæhardæh/	چَهاردَه	۱۴
fifteen	/panzdæh/	پانزدَه	۱۵
sixteen	/šanzdæh/	شانزدَه	۱۶
seventeen	/hefdæh/	هِفدَه	۱۷
eighteen	/hejdæh/	هِجدَه	۱۸
nineteen	/nuzdæh/	نوزدَه	۱۹
twenty	/bist/	بیست	۲۰

Telling Time

In this section, we are going to learn how to tell time in Farsi. In the first dialogue of this lesson, we heard Shabnam and Mani talk about time. We heard them say *eight o'clock* and *half past ten*. Let's now learn how we can tell other times.

Exact hours are easy. If it's one o'clock, you just say:

ساعَت یکِه.
/sa'æt yek-e./

or, in written language, you write:

ساعَت یک است.
/sa'æt yek æst./

If it's two o'clock, you say:

ساعَت دوه.
/sa'æt do-e./

or you write:

ساعَت دو است.
/sa'æt do æst./

The same system is used until twelve o'clock, at which time you say:

ساعَت دَوازدَهه.
/sa'æt dævazdæh-e./

or you write:

ساعَت دَوازدَه است.
/sa'æt dævazdæh æst./

Half in Farsi is نیم (/nim/). If it's half past one, you should say:

ساعت یک و نیمه.
/sa'æt yek o nim-e./

and you should write:

ساعت یک و نیم است.
/sa'æt yek o nim æst./

If it's half past two, you say:

ساعت دو و نیمه.
/sa'æt do o nim-e./

and you write:

ساعت دو و نیم است.
/sa'æt do væ nim æst./

You continue in the same way until half past twelve, at which time you

can say:

ساعت دوازده و نیمه.
/sa'æt dævazdæh o nim-e./

and you can write:

ساعت دوازده و نیم است.
/sa'æt dævazdæh o nim æst./

Quarter is رُبع (/rob'/) in Farsi. Therefore, if it's a quarter after one, you say:

ساعَت یک و رُبعه.
/sa'æt yek o rob'-e./

and so on.

If it's a quarter to one, you say:

ساعَت یک رُبع به یکه.
/sa'æt yek rob' be yek-e./

and if it's a quarter to four, you say:

ساعت یک رُبع به چهاره.
/sa'æt yek rob' be čæhar-e./

and so on.

Minute in Farsi is دَقیقه (/dæqiqe/). If it's ten after one, you say:

ساعت یک و ده دقیقه است.
/sa'æt yek o dæh dæqiqe æst./

and if it's ten to one, you say:

ساعت ده دقیقه به یک است.
/sa'æt dæh daqiqe be yek æst./

and so on. Look at the following examples:

ساعَت یک است.
/sa'æt yek æst./
It's one o'clock.

ساعت دوازده و نیم است.
/sa'æt dævazdæh o nim æst./
It's half past twelve.

ساعت دو و رُبع است.
/sa'æt do vo rob' æst./
It's a quarter after two.

ساعت یک ربع به سه است.
/sa'æt yek rob' be se æst./
It's a quarter to three.

ساعت سه و دَه دَقیقه است.
/sa'æt se vo dæh dæqiqe æst./
It's ten after three.

ساعت بیست دقیقه به چهار است.
/sa'æt bist dæqiqe be čæhar æst./
It's twenty to four.

When you want to say something like *at four o'clock* or *at half past five* in Farsi, you should say:

دَرساعتِ چهار
/dær sa'æt-e čæhar/
at four o'clock

or:

دَر ساعتِ پنج و نیم
/dær sa'æt-e pænj o nim/
at half past five

The preposition دَر in spoken language is optional.

4G. READING

Read the following paragraph about Mani's daily routine. How different is it from yours?

مانی هَر روز دَر ساعَتِ شِش بیدار می شَوَد. او صورَتِ خود را می تراشد، دوش می گیرَد و با شبنم صُبحانه می خورَد. بَعد از صبحانه، مسواک می زَنَد و به سَرِ کار می رَوَد. بَعد از کار، به خانه می آید و روزنامه می خوانَد. الآن مانی دارَد تِلویزیون تماشا می کند.

Every day, Mani wakes up at six o'clock. He shaves (his face), takes a shower, and has breakfast with Shabnam. After breakfast, he brushes (his teeth) and goes to work. After work, he comes home and reads the newspaper. Right now, Mani is watching television.

4H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

The Significance of Water in the Iranian Culture

Most of Iran has a dry climate. Northern Iran meets the Caspian Sea, and the south is bordered by the Persian Gulf and the Arabian Sea. These two areas are humid, but most of central Iran is arid. That is why most

major Iranian cities that are inland are built on the edge of deserts near rivers. This dry climate has made water extremely important in the Iranian culture, more so than in European cultures. Water symbolizes life. That is why the English expression *a rainy day* does not translate well into Farsi. Iranians would consider a rainy day a good day because rain produces an abundance of water. The word for *water* in Farsi is آب (/ab/), and you can see the importance of water in the culture when you look all of the words that are derived from آب. For example, آباد (/ab-ad/) refers to a thriving and prosperous place, and the word آبادی (/ab-ad-i/) means *town* or *village*. Another good example is آبادانی (/ab-ad-an-i/), which refers to civic development and prosperity. All of these words hint at how significant water has been in Persian history and culture.

Exercises

A. Make sentences in the present progressive tense using the words in parentheses. The first one is done for you as an example.

Example:

(مَن، صبحانه خوردَن) مَن دارَم صُبحانه می خورَم.

۱. (مَن، روزنامه خواندَن): ________.

۲. (او، دوش گِرفتَن): ________.

۳. (ما، ناهار خوردَن): ________.

٤. (تو، چای درست کردَن): ________.

٥. (شما، دَویدَن): ________.

٦. (آنها، رَفتَن): ________.

۷. (مَن، شام خوردَن): ________.

B. Ask what each person is doing by changing the last sentence, using the words in parentheses. The first one is done for you as an example.

Example:

تو چه کار داری می کنی؟ (شما)

شما چه کار دارید می کنید؟ or شما دارید چه کار میکنید؟

۱. (آنها) ________؟

۲. (ما) ________؟

۳. (شبنم) ________؟

٤. (مَن) ________؟

٥. (او) ________؟

C. Write what time it is using the information provided in parentheses, as in the example below.

Example:

(۰۱:۲۰) ساعَت یک و بیست دَقیقه است.

۱. (۰۳:۳۰) ________.
۲. (۰۶:۱۵) ________.
۳. (۱۲:۰۰) ________.
٤. (۰٥:٤٥) ________.
٥. (۰۸:٥۰) ________.
٦. (۰٤:۱۲) ________.
۷. (۱۱:٥٥) ________.

D. Complete the following dialogue using the words listed below.

(۱) ممنون (۲) می کنی (۳) سلام (٤) می کنم (٥) می خوری
(٦) می گیره (۷) می کنه

الف- سَلام، عَزیزَم!
ب- ________.
الف- چه کار داری ________؟
ب- دارَم چای درست________.
الف- شبنم چه کار داره________؟
ب- داره دوش________.
الف- صبحانه________؟
ب- بله،________.

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 1 B. 2 C. 1 D. 1 E. 2

Exercises

A.

۱. مَن دارَم روزنامه می خوانَم.
۲. او دارَد دوش می گیرَد.
۳. ما داریم ناهار می خوریم.
٤. تو داری چای دُرُست می کُنی.

۵. شما دارید می دَوید.
۶. آنها دارَند می رَوَند.
۷. مَن دارَم شام می خورَم.

B.

۱. آنها چه کار دارند میکنند؟ /آنها دارَند چه کار می کُنند؟
۲. ما چه کار داریم می کنیم؟ /ما داریم چه کار می کُنیم؟
۳. شبنم چه کار دارد می کند؟ /شبنم دارَد چه کار می کُنَد؟
۴. مَن چه کار دارم می کنم؟ / مَن دارَم چه کار می کُنَم؟
۵. او چه کار دارد می کند؟ /او دارَد چه کار می کُنَد؟

C.

۱. ساعَت سه و نیم است.
۲. ساعَت شِش و رُبع است.
۳. ساعَت دَوازدَه است.
۴. ساعَت یک رُبع به شِش است.
۵. ساعَت دَه دَقیقه به نُه است.
۶. ساعَت چهار و دَوازدَه دَقیقه است.
۷. ساعَت پَنج دَقیقه به دَوازدَه است.

D.

الف- سَلام، عَزیزَم!
ب- ___(۳)__.
الف- چه کار داری ___(۲)__ ؟
ب- دارَم چای درست ___(۴)__.
الف- شبنم چه کار داره __(۷)__ ؟
ب- داره دوش ___(۶)__.
الف- صبحانه ___(۵)__ ؟
ب- بله، __(۱)___.

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Think of your own daily routine and how it differs from Mani's. Write a paragraph in your language journal in Farsi describing your daily routine.

LESSON

5

At the University

Today, Farhad, Mani and Shabnam's son, is at the university. This gives us a chance to learn a few school-related terms. We will also learn how to negate verbs and use simple past tense and prepositional phrases in Farsi. Are you ready?

5A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

to take (a course), to pick up	/bær dašt-æn/	بَرداشتَن
let's go	/be-ræv-im/, /be-r-im/	بِرَویم، بریم
instead of it	/be ja-yæš/, /be ja-š/	به جایَش، به جاش
semester, term	/term/	تِرم
How about you?	/to če-tor?/	تو چِطور؟
to know (know)	/danest-æn/ (/dan/)	دانِستَن (دان)
course, lesson	/dærs/	دَرس
Farsi language and literature	/zæban o ædæb-iyat-e farsi/	زَبان و ادَبیاتِ فارسی
class	/kelas/	کِلاس
Me, too.	/mæn hæm hæmin-tor./	مَن هَم همینطور.

5B. DIALOGUE

Farhad is waiting in a hallway at school for his class to begin. He is talking to an old classmate of his. Listen to them catching up.

فرهاد: سلام، فِرشته! اینجا چه کار می کُنی؟

/færhad/: /sælam, ferešteh! in-ja če kar mi-kon-i?/

فِرشته: سلام، فرهاد. من منتظر کِلاسَم هَستَم. تو هَم کِلاس داری؟

/ferešte/: /sælam, færhad. mæn montæzer-e kelas-æm hæst-æm. to hæm kelas dar-i?/

فرهاد: آره. زبان و ادَبیات فارسی. تو چطور؟

/færhad/: /are. zæban o ædæbiyat-e fars-i. to če-tor?/

فِرشته: من هم همینطور! می دونی(می دانی) اُستادِش کیه؟

/ferešte/: /mæn hæm hæmin-tor! mi-dun-i (mi-dan-i) ostad-eš ki-ye?/

فرهاد: نه، نِمی دونـَم(نمی دانم) . این تِرم دیگه چه دَرس هایی داری؟

/færhad/: /næ, ne-mi-dun-æm (ne-mi-dan-æm). in term dige če dærs-ha-yi dar-i?/

فِرشته: تاریخ، ریاضیات و اِنگلیسی. تو چطور؟

/ferešte/: /tarix, riyaziyat o engelisi. to če-tor?/

فرهاد: مَن هم تاریخ دارَم. این تِرم انگلیسی نَدارَم. زیست شِناسی بَرداشتَم.

/færhad/: /mæn hæm tarix dar-æm. in term engelis-i næ-dar-æm. zist-šenas-i bær dašt-æm./

فِرشته: ریاضی چطور؟ ریاضی نَداری؟

/ferešte/: /riyazi če-tor? riyazi næ-dar-i?/

فرهاد: نه، به جاش یه درس ِ مُهَندِسی بَرداشتَم.

/færhad/: /næ, be ja-š ye dærs-e mohændes-i bær-dašt-æm./

فِرشته: خوب، کلاس داره شُروع می شه (شروع می شود). بریم تو.

/ferešte/: /xob, kelas dar-e šoru' mi-še (šoru' mi-šæv-æd). be-r-im tu./

فرهاد: آره، بریم.

/færhad/: /are, be-r-im./

Farhad: Hi, Fereshteh! What are you doing here?

Fereshteh: Hi, Farhad. I'm waiting for my class. Do you have class, too?

Farhad:	Yeah. Farsi language and literature. How about you?
Fereshteh:	Me, too! Do you know who teaches it? (*lit.*, Do you know who its professor is?)
Farhad:	No, I don't know. What other courses do you have this semester?
Fereshteh:	History, mathematics, and English. How about you?
Farhad:	I have history, too. I don't have English this semester. I took biology.
Fereshteh:	How about math? Don't you have math?
Farhad:	No, I took an engineering course instead.
Fereshteh:	Okay, the class is starting. Let's go in.
Farhad:	Yeah, let's go.

Comprehension Practice

Answer the questions based on the dialogue above.

A. How does Fereshteh tell Farhad that she's waiting for her class?

۱. مَن هَم هَمینطور. ۲. مِن مِنتظر ِ کِلاسَم هستَم. ۳. کِلاسِ داره شُروع می شه.

B. What class are Fereshteh and Farhad waiting for?

۱. زبان و ادبیاتِ فارسی ۲. تاریخ ۳. ریاضیات

C. What other academic subject do Farhad and Fereshteh have in common this semester?

۱. انگلیسی ۲. زیست شناسی ۳. تاریخ

D. What course has Farhad taken instead of math?

۱. یک درس ِ مُهَندِسی ۲. انگلیسی ۳. فارسی

5C. VOCABULARY

literature	/ædæb-iyat/	اَدَبیات
English	/engelis-i/	اِنگِلیسی
history	/tarix/	تاریخ
other	/digær/, /dige/	دیگَر، دیگه
math	/riyazi/	ریاضی
mathematics	/riyaziyat/	ریاضیات

language, tongue	/zæban/	زَبان
biology	/zist šenasi/	زیست شناسی
to begin	/šoru' šod-æn/	شُروع شُدَن
natural sciences	/olum-e tabi'i/	عُلومِ طَبیعی
Farsi, Persian	/fars-i/	فارسی
engineering	/mohændes-i/	مُهَندِسی
too, also	/hæm/	هَم
the same	/hæmin-tor/	هَمینطور

5D. KEY PHRASES

algebra	/jæbr/	جَبر
geography	/joqrafiya/, /joqrafi/	جُغرافیا، جُغرافی
blackboard, chalkboard	/taxte siyah/	تَخته سیاه
knowledge	/daneš/	دانِش
grade school student	/daneš amuz/	دانِش آموز
university student	/daneš-ju/	دانِشجو
college	/daneš-kæde/	دانِشکَده
university	/daneš-gah/	دانِشگاه
office	/dæftær/	دَفتَر
doctorate	/doktora/	دُکتُرا
field of study, major	/rešte/	رِشته
biologist	/zist šenas/	زیست شناس
chemistry	/šimi/	شیمی
social sciences	/olum-e ejtema'i/	عُلومِ اِجتِماعی
humanities (*lit.*, human sciences)	/olum-e ensani/	عُلومِ اِنسانی
master's degree	/foq-e lisans/, /karšenasi-ye æršæd/	فوقِ لیسانس، کارشِناسیِ اَرشَد
physics	/fizik/	فیزیک
library	/ketab-xane/	کِتابخانه

bachelor's degree	/lisans/, /karšenas-i/	لیسانس، کارشِناسی
teacher	/mo'ællem/	مُعَلِم
trigonometry	/mosællæsat/	مُثَلَثات
engineer	/mohændes/	مُهَندِس
unit, credit unit	/vahed/	واحِد
geometry	/hendese/	هِندِسه
What university do you go to?	/be kodam daneš-gah mi- ræv-id (mi-ræv-in)?/	به کُدام دانشگاه می روید (می روین)؟
I go to the University of Tehran.	/mæn be daneš-gah-e tehran mi-rav-æm (mi-r-æm)./	من به دانشگاهِ تِهران می روم (می رم).
What's your major? (*lit.*, Student of what field are you?)	/danešju-ye če rešte-yi hæst-id?/	دانشجوی چه رشته ای هستید؟
What's your major? (*lit.*, What field do you study?)	/če rešte-yi mi-xan-id?/	چه رشته ای می خوانید؟
I study engineering.	/mæn mohændesi mi-xan-æm./	مَن مهندسی می خوانم.

5E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

About Higher Education Terminology in Iran

The first Persian university, which was also one of the first universities in the world, was built during the Sassanid era in around AD 271 in the ancient city of گُندی شاپور (/gondi šapur/, Gondi Shapur). However, the first modern and Western-style higher education institute in Iran was established in 1851. Before that, in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries, many people received higher education in Europe, especially in France. The modern Iranian education system is largely based on the French education system. Because of that, many Farsi education terms are words that have been borrowed from French, for example, لیسانس (/lisans/, bachelor's degree) and دُکتُرا (/doktora/, doctorate). Other such words are دیپلُم (/diplom/), which refers solely to a high school diploma, and تِز (/tez/), which means *thesis*. Many other borrowed French words were also used until recently, but they have been replaced with Farsi (or borrowed Arabic) terms. For example, if someone failed a grade in grade school thirty years ago, he or she became رُفوضه (/rofuze/, from

the French *refusé*, meaning *rejected*), but nowadays that person is said to have become مَردود (/mærdud/, from Arabic, also meaning *rejected*). You saw two such term substitutions in the vocabulary section above: کارشناسی (/kar-šenas-i/) and لیسانس (/lisans/) mean the same thing; the first word is pure Farsi, and the second is from French. A similar example is کارشناسیِ ارشد (/kar-šenas-i-ye æršæd/) and فوقِ لیسانس (/foq-e lisans/), except that فوق isn't French; it's from an Arabic word meaning *above*, so فوقِ لیسانس is a degree above لیسانس.

5F. GRAMMAR

Simple Past Tense

We talked about past and present stems of verbs in Lesson 4. Now we will learn how to make sentences in the simple past tense. This is a tense that we use when we talk about events in the past. For example, in the opening dialogue of this lesson, we heard Farhad say:

زیست شِناسی بَرداشتَم.
/zist šenas-i bær dašt-æm./
I took biology.

This sentence refers to a past event and is in the past tense because it uses a verb with a past stem, داشت (/dašt/). Making past tense verbs in Farsi is simple. All we do is take the past stem of the verb and add the appropriate person ending to it, the same person endings that we use to conjugate verbs in other tenses (i.e., ـَم، ی، ـ ، یم، ید، ـَند); the symbol – is for no ending.

Let's see how we can conjugate the verb رَفتَن (/ræft-æn/, to go). Can you tell what the past stem of this verb is? Yes, you just take away the infinitive marker ـَن (/-æn/) from the infinitive form of the verb, and you're done. The past stem of the verb رَفتَن is رَفت (/ræft/, went). And here's how we conjugate this verb in the simple past tense.

THE VERB رَفتَن (/ræft-æn/, to go) IN THE SIMPLE PAST TENSE

I went	/ræft-æm/	رَفتَم	1st person	SINGULAR
you (*sg.*) went	/ræft-i/	رَفتی	2nd person	
he/she/it went	/ræft/	رَفت	3rd person	
we went	/ræft-im/	رَفتیم	1st person	PLURAL
you (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) went	/ræft-id/	رَفتید	2nd person	
they (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) went	/ræft-ænd/	رَفتَند	3rd person	

If you know both the present stem and the past stem of a verb, then switching between present tense and past tense is easy. Recall that with regular verbs, the past stem is made by adding the suffix ید (/-id/) to the present stem; for example, پَر (/pær/) is the present stem of *jump*, and its past stem is پَرید (/pær-id/). As for irregular verbs, you will have to learn both stems on a case-by-case basis, such as رو (/ro/, go) and رَفت (/ræft/, went).

Can you now guess what the past tense of the verb بودَن (/bud-æn/, to be) is? It's بود (/bud/, was). Let's look at some examples of past tense sentences with بودَن and other verbs.

مَن زیست شناسی بَرداشتَم.
/mæn zist šenas-i bær-dašt-æm./
I took biology.

فرهاد اینجا بود.
/færhad in-ja bud./
Farhad was here.

شُما اینجا بودید؟
/šoma in-ja bud-id?/
You were here?

فرشته فیزیک خواند.
/ferešte fizik xand./
Fereshteh studied physics.

Negation

Sentences in Farsi can be made negative by adding the prefix نَـ (/næ-/) or نِـ (/ne-/) to the verb. نِـ is used before the habitual marker می (/mi-/), as in می روم (/mi-ræv-æm/, I go), which has the negated form نِمی روم (/ne-mi-ræv-æm/, I don't go). نَـ is used in other cases, such as رَفتَم (/raft-æm/, I went), which becomes نَرَفتَم (/næ-ræft-æm/, I didn't go). Here are the negative forms of the verbs کَردَن (/kærd-æn/, to do) and خواستَن (/xast-æn/, to want) in the present and past tenses.

First, here are some examples in the simple present tense.

نِمی کُنَم، نِمی خواهَم
/ne-mi-kon-æm/, / ne-mi-xah-æm/
I don't do, I don't want

نِمی کُنی، نِمی خواهی
/ne-mi-kon-i/, / ne-mi-xah-i/
you (*sg.*) don't do, you (*sg.*) don't want

نِمی کُنَد، نِمی خواهَد
/ne-mi-kon-æd/, / ne-mi-xah-æd/
he/she/it doesn't do, he/she/it doesn't want

نِمی کُنیم، نِمی خواهیم
/ne-mi-kon-im/, / ne-mi-xah-im/
we don't do, we don't want

نِمی کُنید، نِمی خواهید
/ne-mi-kon-id/, / ne-mi-xah-id/
you (*pl./sg. fml.*) don't do, you (*pl./sg. fml.*) don't want

نِمی کُنَند، نِمی خواهَند
/ne-mi-kon-ænd/, / ne-mi-xah-ænd/
they don't do, they don't want

Now, here are some examples in the past tense.

نَکَردَم، نَخواستَم
/næ-kærd-æm/, /næ-xast-æm/
I didn't do, I didn't want

نَکَردی، نَخواستی
/næ-kærd-i/, /næ-xast-i/
you (*sg.*) didn't do, you didn't want

نَکَرد، نَخواست
/næ-kærd/, /næ-xast/
he/she/it didn't do, he/she/it didn't want

نَکَردیم، نَخواستیم
/næ-kærd-im/, /næ-xast-im/
we didn't do, we didn't want

نَکَردید، نَخواستید
/næ-kærd-id/, /næ-xast-id/
you (*pl./sg. fml.*) didn't do, you didn't want

نَکَردَند، نَخواستَند
/næ-kærd-ænd/, /næ-xast-ænd/
they didn't do, they didn't want

Note 1: The present progressive tense doesn't have a negative form. The negation of a sentence in the present progressive tense takes the simple present tense form. For example, the negation of دارَم می رَوَم (/dar-æm mi-ræv-æm/, I'm going) is نِمی رَوَم (/ne-mi-ræv-æm/).

Note 2: The negation of an infinitive is just like the negation of other verb forms. For example, the negation of رَفتَن (/ræft-æn/, to go) is نَرَفتَن (/næ-ræft æn/, not to go).

Note 3: Recall that phrasal verbs are made up of more than one word—the verb plus a particle—e.g., بَرداشتَن (/bær dašt-æn/, to pick up) or زِندِگی کَردَن (/zende-gi kærd-æn/, to live). Unlike phrasal verbs in English (e.g., to come up), the particle precedes the verb in Farsi. In the negations of these verbs, only the verbal element is negated. For example, the

negation of بَرداشتَن is بَرنَداشتَن (/bær næ-dašt-æn/, not to pick up), and the negation of زندگی کردن is زندگی نَکَردَن (/zendegi næ-kærd-æn/, not to live).

Note 4: In English, if the subject of the sentence is a term like *no one*, *nobody*, or *no student*, or if the verb is modified by a negative adverb like *never*, then the verb is not negated, as in *nobody came* or *I never get stressed*. But in Farsi, the verb in a negative sentence is always negated, even if the sentence contains such negative words.

The present tense form of the verb بودَن (/bud-æn/, to be) has an irregular negative form. The forms اَست (/æst/, is) and هَست (/hæst/, there is) when negated both become نیست (/nist/, isn't, there isn't). All of the negative forms of the verb بودَن are listed in the table below.

THE NEGATIVE FORM OF THE VERB بودَن (/bud-æn/, to be) IN THE PRESENT TENSE

I am not	/nist-æm/	نیستَم	1st person	SINGULAR
you (*sg.*) are not	/nist-i/	نیستی	2nd person	
he/she/it is not	/nist/	نیست	3rd person	
we are not	/nist-im/	نیستیم	1st person	PLURAL
you (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) are not	/nist-id/	نیستید	2nd person	
they are not, he/she is not (*sg. fml.*)	/nist-ænd/	نیستَند	3rd person	

Prepositional Phrases

Prepositions are words that often denote position or direction in time or space. In English, the words *in, on, over, under, above, below, at, around, about, through,* and *across* are all prepositions. There are also other words that are prepositions but don't necessarily represent position or direction in time or space, such as *of, for, with,* and *by.*

Here is a list of Farsi prepositions with example sentences. Some of them you have already encountered; others are new.

SOME COMMON FARSI PREPOSITIONS

from	/æz/	از
over	/bala-ye/	بالایِ
to	/be/	به
after	/bæ'd æz/	بَعد از
outside	/birun-e/	بیرونِ
before	/piš æz/	پیش از
in, inside	/tu-ye/	تویِ
in, at	/dær/	دَر
on	/ru-ye/	رویِ
under, below	/zir-e/	زیرِ
before	/qæbl æz/	قَبل از
beside	/kenar-e/	کِنارِ
near	/næzdik-e/	نَزدیکِ

فرهاد از دانشگاه می آیَد.
/færhad æz daneš-gah mi-a-yæd./
Farhad is coming (comes) from the university.

یک چراغ بالای میز است.
/yek čeraq bala-ye miz æst./
There is a light over the desk.

فِرشته به دانشگاه می رَوَد.
/ferešte be daneš-gah mi-ræv-æd./
Fereshteh is going (goes) to the university.

فِرشته بَعد از دانشگاه به خانه می رَوَد.
/ferešte bæ'd æz daneš-gah be xane mi-ræv-æd./
Fereshteh goes home after school (*lit.*, university).

کسی بیرونِ کِلاس نیست.
/kæs-i birun-e kelas nist./
There is nobody outside the classroom.

او پیش از ناهار چای نمی نوشَد.
/u piš æz nahar čay ne-mi-nuš-æd./
He/She does not drink tea before lunch.

کتابم تویِ کیفَم است.
/ketab-æm tu-ye kif-æm æst./
My book is in my bag.

من دَر تهران زندگی می کنم.
/mæn dær tehran zendegi mi-kon-æm./
I live in Tehran.

کتابِ تو رویِ میز است.
/ketab-e to ru-ye miz æst./
Your book is on the desk.

کیفِ فرهاد زیرِ صندلی است.
/kif-e færhad zir-e sændæli æst./
Farhad's bag is under the chair.

او قَبل از ناهار چای نمی نوشَد.
/u qæbl æz nahar čay ne-mi-nuš-æd./
He/She does not drink tea before lunch.

یک دانشجو کنارِ در است.
/yek daneš -ju kenar-e dær æst./
There is a student beside the door.

یک دانشجو نزدیکِ در است.
/yek daneš-ju næzdik-e dær æst./
There is a student near the door.

As you can see, most Farsi prepositions are connected to their following noun phrase with the conjoining vowel /-e/ (see Lesson 3). Some aren't, however. The conjoining vowel has been added to the prepositions that take it for your convenience.

Numbers 21–99

The numbers 21 through 99 are quite easy to learn. All you need to do is learn how to say 20, 30, . . . , 90, and then add the numbers 1 through 9 to them, just as you would in English. So let's do that.

NUMBERS 20–90 IN TENS

twenty	/bist/	بیست	۲۰
thirty	/si/	سی	۳۰
forty	/čehel/	چِهِل	٤۰
fifty	/pænjah/	پَنجاه	٥۰
sixty	/šæst/	شَصت	٦۰
seventy	/hæftad/	هَفتاد	۷۰
eighty	/hæštad/	هَشتاد	۸۰
ninety	/nævæd/	نَوَد	۹۰

twenty-one	/bist o yek/	بیست و یک	۲۱
twenty-two	/bist o do/	بیست و دو	۲۲
twenty-three	/bist o se/	بیست و سه	۲۳
twenty-four	/bist o čæhar/	بیست و چهار	۲٤
twenty-five	/bist o pænj/	بیست و پنج	۲٥
twenty-six	/bist o šeš/	بیست و شش	۲٦
twenty-seven	/bist o hæft/	بیست و هفت	۲۷
twenty-eight	/bist o hæšt/	بیست و هشت	۲۸
twenty-nine	/bist o noh/	بیست و نُه	۲۹

5G. READING

Read this passage about the Iranian school system.

دانِش آموزان دَر ایرانِ پَنج سال به مدرسه ی ابتدایی می رَوَند. بَعد از آن سه سال به مَدرسه ی راهنمایی می روند. آنها دَر مَدرسه ی راهنمایی درس های زیادی می خوانند. دبیرستان دَر ایران سه سال است، وَلی پیش از دانِشگاه، دانِش آموزان یک سال دَر سَطحِ پیش دانِشگاهی دَرس می خوانند.

Students in Iran go to elementary school for five years. After that, they go to middle school (*lit.*, guidance school) for three years. They study many subjects in middle school. High school in Iran is three years, but before university, students study at the pre- university level for one year.

year	/sal/	سال
elementary	/ebteda-yi/	ابتدایی
guidance, advice	/rahnæma-yi/	راهنمایی
high school	/dæbirestan/	دَبیرستان
level	/sæth/	سَطح
pre-university	/piš danešgah-i/	پیش دانِشگاهی

5H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

The Significance of Education Among Iranians

Education is extremely important to Iranians. More than eighty percent of the Iranians over fifteen can read and write. There are more than two hundred public universities and hundreds of private ones. Admission to university requires taking a highly demanding national entrance examination, which almost all high school graduates take. The exam is extremely competitive, so applicants spend months preparing for it. Only the top five percent of all applicants get admitted to universities. Public universities are extremely popular, and thus harder to get into, because students at these universities pay no tuition. In exchange for the free education, graduates of public universities are required to work inside Iran for a period of time equal to the length of their free higher education. This is a measure to control the country's brain drain problem. For sociopolitical reasons, however, the problem has escalated, and now, according to the International Monetary Fund, Iran ranks highest in brain drain among ninety countries measured. This is mainly because of the country's inability to absorb and retain this highly qualified workforce.

Exercises

A. Turn these sentences from simple present tense into simple past tense. The first one is done for you as an example.

فرهاد به دانشگاه می رَوَد.

فرهاد به دانشگاه رَفت.

۱. فرشته زیست شناسی می خوانَد. __________.

۲. مانی ساعَتِ شِش از خواب بلند می شَوَد. __________.

۳. تعدادی از دانشجویان در کلاس هستند. __________.

٤. ما جُغرافی می خوانیم. __________.

٥. من ساعَتِ هَفت و نیم حَمّام می کُنَم. __________.

٦. تو در خانه هستی؟ __________؟

۷. چه می خرید؟ __________؟

B. Turn these simple past tense sentences into the present progressive tense (with داشتَن). The first one is done for you as an example.

کُجا رَفتید؟ کُجا دارید می رَوید؟ or دارید کجا می رَوید؟

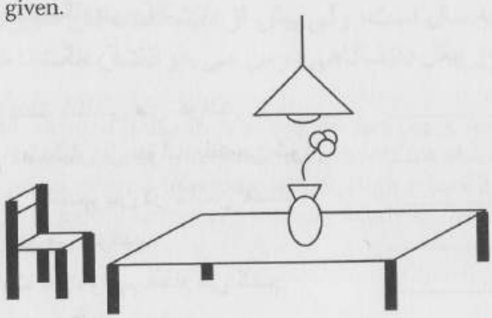
۱. ما ریاضی خواندیم. __________.

۲. شبنم کیفش را کنارِ میز گذاشت. ________.
۳. مادَرَم مسواک کَرد. ________.
٤. ما به تخته سیاه نگاه کَردیم. ________.
٥. شما چه نوشیدید؟ ________؟
٦. چمدانَت را کُجا گُذاشتی؟ ________؟

C. Negate the following sentences. The first one is done for you as an example.

دانشجویان دَر کلاس هستند. دانشجویان دَر کلاس نیستَند.
۱. پِدَرَم ساعَتِ هَشت شام می خورَد. ________.
۲. بَرادَرهایَم طَبَقه ی بالا هَستَند. ________.
۳. خواهَرِ مَن چای دُرُست کَرد. ________.
٤. هَمسَرِ شُما مُهَندِسی می خوانَند. ________.
٥. مَن ساعَتِ دَه خوابیدَم. ________.
٦. خواهرزاده ی مَن به دبیرستان می رَوَد. ________.
۷. مَن لیسانس دارَم. ________.

D. Look at the diagram below and finish the sentences that follow using the words given.



گُل (/gol/, flower) زیرِ در بالایِ نَزدیکِ
۱. یک صَندَلی ________ میز است.
۲. یک ________ رویِ میز است.
۳. چراغ ________ میز است.
٤. گُل ________ چراغ است.
٥. گُل ________ گُلدان (/gol-dan/, vase) است.

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 2 B. 1 C. 3 D. 1

Exercises

A.

۱. فرشته زیست شناسی خواند.
۲. مانی ساعَتِ شِشِ از خواب بلند شُد.
۳. تعدادی از دانشجویان در کلاس بودَند.
٤. ما جُغرافی خواندیم.
٥. من ساعَتِ هَفت و نیم حَمّام کَردَم.
٦. تو در خانه بودی؟
۷. چه خریدید؟

B.

۱. ما ریاضی داریم می خوانیم. or ما داریم ریاضی می خوانیم.
۲. شبنم کیفش را کنار میز دارد می گذارَد. or
شبنم دارد کیفش را کنار میز می گذارد.
۳. مادرم مسواک دارد می کند or مادَرَم دارَد مسواک می کُنَد.
٤. ما به تخته سیاه داریم نگاه می کنیم. or
ما داریم به تخته سیاه نگاه می کنیم.
٥. شما چه دارید می نوشید؟ or شما دارید چه می نِویسید؟
٦. چمدانت را کُجا داری می گذاری؟ or
چمدانت را داری کُجا می گذاری؟

C.

۱. پِدَرَم ساعَتِ هَشت شام نِمی خورَد.
۲. بَرادَرهایَم طبقه ی بالا نیستَند.
۳. خواهَرِ مَن چای دُرُست نَکَرد.
٤. هَمسَرِ شُما مُهَندِسی نمی خوانَند.
٥. مَن ساعَتِ دَه نَخوابیدَم.
٦. خواهرزاده ی مَن به دَبیرستان نِمی رَوَد.
۷. مَن لیسانس نَدارَم.

D.

۱. نزدیک ۲. گُل ۳. بالای ٤. زیر ٥. در

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

In this activity, you are about to embark on your first Web surfing on Persian sites. In the second culture topic of this lesson, you learned that one of the oldest universities in the world was built by the Persians in Gondi Shapur. Now, you're going to visit a Farsi site and try to find some information about this university.

First, go to http://fa.wikipedia.org. On the upper left-hand side of the screen, you should see الف — ی (/ælef – ye/), which points to an alphabetical index of all of the Farsi documents on the site. Then, locate the link دا (/da/) in the index. This will show you all of the documents that begin with دا. In the drop-down menu toward the top of the page and in front of the phrase فضای نام (/fæza-ye nam/, name space) select رده (/ræde/ portal) and click on برود (/be-ræv-æd/, go). Now you will see a list of all of the Farsi documents starting with دا. Try to locate the word دانشگاه ها (/daneš-gah-ha/, universities) and click on it. Under the letter ف, you will find the phrase فرهنگستان گندیشاپور (/færhæng-estan-e gondi-šapur/, Gondi Shapour Academy). Follow that link. Try to see if you can recognize any words there. Print out that page if you can, circle the words that you recognize, and write their meanings next to them. Keep the printout and your notes in your language journal.

LESSON

6

Jim Visits a Museum.

In this lesson, you'll learn how to ask for directions. You'll also learn a little about arts and crafts in Iran. The grammar points that we focus on in this lesson are imperative sentences, comparative and superlative adjectives, and ordinal numbers. Now let's warm up!

6A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

end	/enteha/	اِنتِها
first	/ævval/, /ævval-in/	اَوّل، اَوّلین
on foot	/piyade/	پیاده
street	/xiyaban/, /xiyabun/	خیابان، خیابون
far	/dur/	دور
second	/dovvom/, /dovvom-in/	دُوُّم، دُوُّمین
carpet, rug	/færš/	فَرش
museum	/muze/	موزه
near	/næzdik/	نَزدیک
no (*fml.*)	/næ-xeyr/	نَخِیر

6B. DIALOGUE

جیم: ببخشید، خانوم. موزه ی فَرش. ایران از اینجا دوره؟

:/jim/ /bebæxšid, xanum. muze-ye færš-e iran æz inja dur-e?/

رَهگُذر: نَخیر. پیاده دَه دَقیقه راهه.

:/ræhgozær/ /næ-xeyr. piyade dæh dæqiqe rah-e./

جیم:	چِطور می تونَم بِرَم اونجا؟
/jim/:	/če-tor mi-tun-æm be-r-æm un-ja?/
رَهگُذر:	اَوّل برید (بروید) تا انتهای این خیابون.
/ræhgozær/:	/ævvæl be-rid (be-ræv-id) ta enteha-ye in xiyabun./
جیم:	خوب.
/jim/:	/xob./
رَهگُذر:	بَعد، برید دَستِ چَپ. سَرِ دُوُمین چهارراه بپیچین (بپیچید) دَستِ راست.
/ræhgozær/:	/bæ'd, be-r-id dæst-e čæp. sær-e dovv-omin čæhar-rah be-pič-in (be-pič-id) dæst-e rast./
جیم:	سَرِ چَندُمین چهارراه؟
/jim/:	/sær-e čænd-omin čæhar-rah?/
رَهگُذر:	دُوُمین چهارراه.
/ræhgozær/:	/dovv-omin čæhar-rah./
جیم:	موزه ی فَرش نَزدیک تَره یا موزه ی هُنر؟
/jim/:	/muze-ye færš næzdik-tær-e ya muze-ye honær?/
رَهگُذر:	موزه ی فَرش نزدیکتره. بُزُرگ تَرین مَجموعه ی فرش ها رو هم در ایران داره (دارد).
/ræhgozær/:	/muze-ye færš næzdik-tær-e. bozorg-tærin mæjmu'e-ye færš-ha ro hæm dær iran dar-e (dar-æd)./
جیم:	خیلی ممنون.
/jim/:	/xeyli mæmnun./
رَهگُذر:	خواهش می کُنَم.
/ræhgozær/:	/xaheš mi-kon-æm./

Jim: Excuse me, ma'am. Is the Iranian Carpet Museum far from here?

Passerby: No. It's a ten-minute walk (*lit.*, It's ten minutes on foot).

Jim: How can I get there?

Passerby: First, go to the end of this street.

Jim:	Okay.
Passerby:	Then, go left. At the second intersection, turn right.
Jim:	At which intersection?
Passerby:	The second intersection.
Jim:	Is the carpet museum closer or the art museum?
Passerby:	The carpet museum is closer. It also has the largest collection of rugs in Iran.
Jim:	Thanks a lot.
Passerby:	You're welcome.

Comprehension Practice

A. Where does Jim want to go?

۱. موزه ی هنر ایران ۲. موزه ی فرش ایران ۳. انتهای خیابان

B. Is the carpet museum far from where he is?

۱. بله، نیم ساعَت راهه. ۲. نخیر، دَر انتهای این خیابانه ۳. نخیر، پیاده ده دقیقه راهه.

C. What does the passerby tell Jim to do first to get to the museum?

۱. اول برید تا انتهای این خیابون. ۲. اول برید دست چپ. ۳. اول برید دست راست.

D. How does Jim ask at which intersection he has to turn?

۱. موزه از اینجا دوره؟ ۲. موزه ی هنر نزدیکتره؟ ۳. سَرِ چندمین چهارراه؟

E. What does the passerby say about the carpet museum at the end of the conversation?

۱. موزه ی فرش بزرگترین مجموعه ی فرش ها رو در ایران داره.
۲. موزه ی فرش خیلی از اینجا دوره.
۳. موزه ی فرش خیلی قدیمیه.

6C. VOCABULARY

then	/bæ'd/	بَعد
to turn	/pič-id-æn/	پیچیدَن
to, until	/ta/	تا
can, to be able to	/tævan-est-æn/ (/tævan/)	تَوانِستَن (تَوان)

which (in order)	/čænd-om-in/	چَندُمین
intersection	/čæhar-rah/	چهارراه
You're welcome. / Please.	/xaheš mi-kon-æm./	خواهِش می کُنَم.
Okay.	/xob./	خوب.
way, road	/rah/	راه
passerby	/ræh-gozær/	رَهگُذر
at	/sær-e/	سَرِ
collection	/mæjmu'e/	مَجموعه
art	/honær/	هُنَر

6D. KEY PHRASES

that side of the street/ this side of the street	/an tæræf-e xiyaban/, /in tæræf-e xiyaban/	آن/این طَرَفِ خیابان
expressway	/bozorg-rah/	بُزُرگراه
cul-de-sac, dead end	/bon-bæst/	بُن بَست
boutique	/butik/	بوتیک
mall	/pasaž/	پاساژ
back, behind	/pošt/	پُشت
bridge, overpass	/pol/	پُل
curve	/pič/	پیچ
road	/jadde/	جادّه
traffic light	/čeraq-e rah-næma-yi/	چِراغِ راهنَمایی
(street) line	/xæt keši/	خَط کِشی
right (*adv.*), just	/dorost/	دُرُست
in front of, opposite	/ru-be-ru-ye/	روبروی
underpass	/zir-gozær/	زیرگُذر
city	/šæhr/	شَهر
pedestrian	/aber-e piyade/	عابِرِ پیاده
store	/foruš-gah/	فُروشگاه
side street, lane, alley	/kuče/	کوچه
kiosk	/kiyusk/, /dække/	کیوسک، دَکّه

gallery	/galeri/	گالری
straight	/mostæqim/	مُستقیم
shop	/mæqaze/	مَغازه
roundabout, circle	/meydan/	میدان
hotel	/hotel/	هُتِل

6E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Arts and Crafts in Persia

Iran is a land rich in history, literature, and arts and crafts. There have been people living in the Iranian plateau since the Stone Age; however, archaeologists believe that the formation of a town in سیَلک (/siælk/, Sialk) in central Iran around 4,500 BC marks the beginnings of civilization in that area. Citizens of this little town knew pottery and metalwork. In the centuries that followed, Iran (Persia) came to play a major role in the ancient world. The Persians were the innovators of mail and of the banking system. The word *check* (a bank note) comes from the Farsi word شاه (/šah/, king). Persia was also among the first nations to employ a writing system. Thousands of years of interaction with a variety of world cultures have provided Iranians with a great repertoire of modes of artistic expression. Hand-knotted Persian rugs are known throughout the world. Iran also has a wealth of other art forms, such as music, poetry, calligraphy, painting, architecture, and many different kinds of crafts. For more information, visit the website of the Iranian Cultural Heritage Organization at http://iranmiras.ir.

6F. GRAMMAR

Imperatives and the Subjunctive Mood

An *imperative sentence* is in essence an order or instruction. Imperatives in English are made with the base form of the verb in sentences with no subject (e.g., *Come!*). In Farsi, imperative sentences do not have a subject either, but the verb comes in a special imperative form. An imperative verb in Farsi is made with the prefix بـ (/be-/) plus the present stem of the verb. For example, recall that the present stem of the verb خواندَن (/xan-d-æn/, to read) is خوان (/xan/); the imperative form of this verb will then be بخوان (/be-xan/).

Pronunciation Note: When the first vowel in the stem is /o/, e.g., رو (/ro/, go), the vowel in the prefix also becomes /o/. For example, the imperative of رَفتَن (/ræft-æn/, to go) is بُرو (/bo-ro/).

Spelling Note: If the verb stem starts with the vowel /a/, then the prefix turns into بیـ (/bi-/). For example, the present stem of آمَدَن (/amæd-æn/,

to come) is آ (/a/), so the imperative form of this verb will be بیا (/biy-a/).

Grammar Note: Many Farsi phrasal verbs, which contain both a particle and a verb—e.g., بَرداشتَن (/bær dašt-æn/, to take, to pick up)—especially those starting with the particle بَر (/bær/), do not take the prefix بِـ (/be-/) in their imperative form. In the case of بَرداشتَن (/bær dašt-æn/), for example, the imperative form is بَردار (/bær dar/), because the present stem of داشتَن (/dašt-æn/) is دار (/dar/).

Here are some examples of verbs in their infinitival form (on the right) with their present stem (in the middle) and their second person singular imperative form (on the left).

SOME VERBS WITH THEIR PRESENT STEMS AND IMPERATIVE FORMS

	2ND PERSON IMPERATIVE		SINGULAR PRESENT		STEM INFINITIVE	
turn	/be-pič/	بپیچ	/pič/	پیچ	/pič-id-æn/	پیچیدَن
sleep	/be-xab/	بِخواب	/xab/	خواب	/xab-id-æn/	خوابیدَن
read	/be-xan/	بخوان	/xan/	خوان	/xan-d-æn/	خواندَن
go	/bo-ro/	بُرو	/ro/	رو	/ræft-æn/	رَفتَن
say	/be-gu/	بِگو	/gu/	گو	/goft-æn/	گُفتَن

The above second person singular forms are used in informal settings.

To address one person in a formal setting or to address multiple people, the plural form of the imperative is used. You can turn the above forms into plural constructions by adding the second person plural ending يد (/-id/) to the end of them. Below you can see the previous examples along with their plural forms.

A COMPARISON OF SINGULAR AND PLURAL IMPERATIVES

/be-pič-id/ (written), /bepič-in/ (spoken)	بپیچید، بپیچین	/be-pič/	بپیچ
/be-ræv-id/ (written), /be-rid/ (spoken)	بِرَوید، بِرید	/bo-ro/	بُرو
/be-xab-id/ (written), /be-xab-in/ (spoken)	بِخوابید، بخوابین	/be-xab/	بِخواب
/be-xan-id/ (written), /be-xan-in/ (spoken)	بخوانید، بخوانین	/be-xan/	بخوان

/be-gu-yid/ (written), /be-gu-yin/ (spoken)	بِـگویید، بگویین	/be-gu/	بِـگو

Negative imperatives use the prefix نَـ (/næ-/) before the present stem of the verb instead of the prefix بِـ (/be-/).

نپَّر نپَّرید.
/næ-ppær./, /næ-ppær-id./
Don't go. (*sg., pl.*)

نَـرو نَـرَوید.
/næ-ro./, /næ-ræv-id./
Don't say. (*sg., pl.*)

نَـگو نَـگویید.
/næ-gu./, /næ-gu-yid./
Don't run. (*sg., pl.*)

نَدو نَدَوید.
/næ-do./, /næ-dæv-id./
Don't run. (*sg., pl.*)

Comparatives and Superlatives

Gradable adjectives, adjectives that describe gradable properties, such as *big* or *quiet*, can come in a *comparative* and a *superlative* form in addition to their base form. For example, the adjective *tall* in English has the comparative form *taller* and the superlative form *tallest*.

In Farsi, we make comparative adjectives by adding the suffix تَـر (/-tær/) to the adjective. Superlatives are made by adding the suffix تَـرین (/-tærin/). For example, the adjective دور (/dur/, far) has the following comparative and superlative forms: دورتَـر (/dur-tær/, farther) and دورتَـرین (/dur-tærin/, farthest). Here are some examples.

SOME GRADABLE ADJECTIVES WITH THEIR COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE FORMS

	SUPERLATIVE	COMPARATIVE	BASE
bad, worse, worst	بَدتَـرین (/bæd-tarin/)	بَدتَـر (/bæd-tær/)	بَد (/bæd/)
tall, taller, tallest; long, longer, longest	بُـلَندتَـرین (/bolænd-tærin/)	بُـلَندتَـر (/bolænd-tær/)	بُـلَند (/bolænd/)
dark, darker, darkest	تاریک تَـرین (/tarik-tærin/)	تاریک تَـر (/tarik-tær/)	تاریک (/tarik/)

good, better, best	خوب تَرین (/xub-tærin/)	خوب تَر (/xub-tær/)	خوب (/xub/)
beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful	زیباتَرین (/ziba-tærin/)	زیباتَر (/ziba-tær/)	زیبا (/ziba/)
pretty, prettier, prettiest	قَشَنگ تَرین (/qæšæng-tærin/)	قَشَنگ تَر (/qæšæng-tær/)	قَشَنگ (/qæšæng/)
short, shorter, shortest	کوتاه تَرین (/kutah-tærin/)	کوتاه تَر (/kutah-tær/)	کوتاه (/kutah/)

Vocabulary Note 1: There is another adjective in Farsi, بِه (/beh/), that means *good*. This adjective is now somewhat dated, but its comparative and superlative forms are quite common and are frequently used as the comparative and superlative forms of خوب (/xub/, good), even more commonly than خوب تر (/xub-tær/) and خوب ترین (/xub-tærin/). These forms are بِهتَر (/beh-tær/, better) and بِهتَرین (/beh-tærin/, best).

Vocabulary Note 2: The word بیش (/biš/) means *very* or *a lot*, but, like بِه, it is very rare in today's Farsi. Its comparative and superlative forms, بیشتر (/biš-tær/, more) and بیشترین (/biš-tærin/, most), however, are very widely used.

Spelling Note: The suffixes تَر (/-tær/, -er) and تَرین (/-tærin/, -est), according to today's writing standards, are written separated from the main adjective, as in نَزدیک تَر and نَزدیک تَرین, but you might still see people attach these suffixes to the adjective, as in نَزدیکتَر and نَزدیکتَرین.

Ordinal Numbers

The numbers that we have been studying so far (i.e., 1, 2, 3, 4 . . .) are called *cardinal numbers*. When you use terms like *first, second, third, fourth*, etc., to refer to the rank or position of something in a sequence, you are using *ordinal numbers*. Ordinal numbers in Farsi are made by simply adding the suffix ـُم (/-om/) to cardinal numbers, just as you would add the suffix *-th* (and *-st, -nd,* and *-rd*) to English cardinal numbers (e.g., *four* becomes *fourth*). Here is a sample of cardinal numbers.

SOME FARSI ORDINAL NUMBERS

		ORDINAL	CARDINAL
first	/ævvæl/, /yek-om/	اوّل، یکُم	یک
second	/dovv-om/	دُوُم	دو
third	/sevv-om/	سِوُم	سه

fourth	/čæhar-om/	چَهارُم	چهار
fifth	/pænj-om/	پَنجُم	پنج
tenth	/dæh-om/	دَهُم	ده
twentieth	/bist-om/	بیستُم	بیست
twenty-first	/bist o yek-om/	بیست و یکُم	بیست و یک
twenty-second	/bist o dovv-om/	بیست و دُوُّم	بیست و دو

Note that the first three cardinal numbers don't follow the rule precisely. The only completely irregular form is اول (/ævvæl/, first), which is actually borrowed from Arabic. The word یکُم (/yek-om/) is used but is not very common. دُوُّم (/dovv-om/, second) and سوّم (/sevv-om/, third) aren't technically irregular. Usually, in Farsi, when a word ends in the vowel /o/ and we want to add a suffix starting with /o/ to it, we insert a /v/ between the two /o/ vowels. Essentially, the same thing is happening here.

Note 1: Sometimes the suffix ـُمین (/-omin/) is used instead of ـُم (/om/) in more formal language (e.g., اَوّلین، دُوُّمین، سِوُّمین, etc.).

Note 2: While there is no difference between the meanings of ordinal numbers with ـُم (/-om/) and those with ـُمین (/-omin/), there is a major difference in where they appear in a noun phrase.

Ordinals with ـُم appear after the nouns they modify and are connected to the noun with اضافه (/-e/). Examples:

خیابانِ اوّل (/xiyaban-e ævvæl/, the first street)

کتابِ دُوُّم (/ketab-e dovv-om/, the second book)

Ordinals with ـُمین appear before the nouns they modify, and no اضافه is used. Examples:

اوّلین خیابان (/ævvælin xiyaban/, the first street)

دوُّمین کتاب (/dovv-omin ketab/, the second book)

Farsi also has an interesting question word that is used to inquire about the rank or position of something in a sequence. The word چَندُم (/čænd-om/), or چَندُمین (/čænd-omin/), can be roughly translated into English as *which*, but the difference is that the answer to a question with چندم, , or چندمین, must be an ordinal number. In the dialogue, we heard the pedestrian tell Jim to turn right at the fourth intersection.

سَرِ دُوُّمین چَهارراه بپیچید دَستِ راست.
/sær-e dovv-omin čæhar-rah be-pič-id dæst-e rast./

Jim, who does not get the entire sentence, asks:

سَرِ چَندُمین چَهارراه؟
/sær-e čænd-omin čæhar-rah?/
At which intersection?

and the passerby answers:

دُوُمین چَهارراه.
/dovv-omin čæhar-rah./
The second intersection.

Numbers 100–1,000

In the previous lessons we learned how to count from 1 to 99 in Farsi. To count to 1,000, all we need now is to learn the multiples of 100. Here they are:

NUMBERS 100–1,000 IN HUNDREDS

one hundred	/sæd/, /yek-sæd/	صَد، یِکصَد	۱۰۰
two hundred	/devist/	دِویست	۲۰۰
three hundred	/si-sæd/	سیصَد	۳۰۰
four hundred	/čæhar-sæd/	چَهارصَد	٤۰۰
five hundred	/pan-sæd/	پانصَد	٥۰۰
six hundred	/šeš-sæd/	شِشصَد	٦۰۰
seven hundred	/hæft-sæd/	هَفتصَد	۷۰۰
eight hundred	/hæšt-sæd/	هَشتصَد	۸۰۰
nine hundred	/noh-sæd/	نُهصَد	۹۰۰
one thousand	/hezar/, /yek-hezar/	هِزار، یِکهِزار	۱۰۰۰

The numbers in between the multiples of 100 are made by connecting the above numbers to the smaller numbers with و (/o/, and).

۱۲۱: یکصَد و بیست و یک
/yek-sæd o bist o yek/
one hundred and twenty-one

٤٥۸: چهارصد و پنجاه و هشت
/čæhar-sæd o pænjah o hæšt/
four hundred and fifty-eight

٦۰۷: ششصد و هفت
/šeš-sæd o hæft/
six hundred and seven

۷۱۵: هفتصد و پانزده
/hæft-sæd o panzdæh/
seven hundred and fifteen

۹۹۰: نهصد و نود
/noh-sæd o nævæd/
nine hundred and ninety

6G. READING

Read this passage about the Persian rug.

فَرشِ ایران از بِهتَرین فَرش های دُنیاست. به فَرش قالی هَم می گویَند. هُنَرِ دُرُست کَردَنِ قالی قالیبافی است. قالیبافی در ایران یک هُنَرِ خیلی قدیمی است. موزه ی فَرشِ ایران یک مَجموعه ی بسیار بزرگ از قالی های زیبا دارَد. مَردُمِ خیلی از شَهرهای ایران قالی می بافَند.

The Iranian carpet is among the best carpets in the world. Carpets are also called rugs. The art of making rugs is rug weaving. Rug weaving is a very old art in Iran. The Carpet Museum of Iran has a very large collection of beautiful rugs. The people of many Iranian cities weave rugs.

world	/donya/	دُنیا
rug	/qali/	قالی
people	/mærdom/	مَردُم
to weave	/baft-æn/ (/baf/)	بافتَن (باف)

6H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Farsi Script and Calligraphy

Like English and other languages, Farsi script has many different typefaces. The word for *script* in Farsi is خَط (/xætt/), which also means *line*. The script typeface commonly used in books like this one is called خَطِّ نَسخ (/xætt-e næsx/), which is based on a certain Arabic script called خَطِّ کوفی (/xætt-e kuf-i/). During the early post-Islamic periods of Iran, a new Farsi script was developed and several other scripts were

designed afterwards. Because the development of these scripts predated printing technology, people had to write books by hand, and the most popular books to write were the Koran and literary works. It was common to try to make these books as visually pleasing as possible, and this gave rise to the art of modern calligraphy in Iran. Two of the most common scripts used in Persian calligraphy nowadays are خَطِّ نَستَعلیق (/xætt-e næstæ'liq/) and خَطِّ شِکَسته (/xætt-e šekæst-e/). The most prominent characteristic of these scripts is that they mostly use curves rather than straight lines. The sharp *teeth* of letters like س and ش are also avoided; instead, the teeth are smoothed out as curves. You can learn more about Persian calligraphy and see some samples by visiting http://www.persianpaintings.com/caligra.html and the Rumi Gallery website at http://rumigallery.com/.

Exercises

A. Complete the following sentences using the correct form of the verb in parentheses. But first, here are two words that you will need to know.

دیروز (/diruz/, yesterday)

هَرروز (/hær ruz/, every day)

۱. فرهاد دیروز به دانشگاه (رَفتَن) _________.

۲. فرهاد و فرشته هرروز در کلاس (نِشَستَن)__________.

۳. تا سومین مغازه (رَفتَن) __________. (*fml.*)

٤. تا سومین مغازه (رَفتَن) __________. (*infml.*)

٥. درکِلاس (نِشستَن) __________. (*pl.*)

٦. چای دُرُست (کردَن)__________. (*fml.* and *negative*)

۷. کتاب را (برداشتَن)__________. (*infml.* and *negative*)

B. Use the correct form of the adjective in parentheses. But before you start, take a look at a couple of useful words.

یکی (/yek-i/, one)

آثارِ هُنَری (/asar-e honær-i/, works of art, artistic works)

۱. این کتاب از آن یکی (خوب) _________ است.

۲. این (خوب)_________ کتابِ این کتابخانه است.

۳. ماشینِ فرهاد از ماشینِ فرشته (نو) _________ است.

٤. این گالِری (بزرگ)_________ مجموعه ی آثارِ هُنَری را دارَد.

٥. این میز از آن میز (بُلَند)_________ است.

٦. خانه ی ما (قدیمی)_________ خانه ی اینجاست.

C. Use the correct ordinal form of the number given in parentheses.

۱. سَرِ چهارراهِ (۳) __________ بپیچید دَستِ چَپ.
۲. (۵) __________ خانه مالِ پِدَرَم بود.
۳. مَن (۱) __________ کِتابَم را نوشتَم.
٤. ماشین (۲) __________ مَن خیلی بَد بود.
٥. هُتِل دَر انتهای خیابانِ (۸) __________ است.

D. Write out these numbers.

۱. (۹۹۹): __________
۲. (۳۱۸): __________
۳. (۲۱۹): __________
٤. (۱۲۱۹): __________
٥. (۸۰۹): __________

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 2 B. 3 C. 1 D. 3 E. 1

Exercises

A.

۱. رَفت
۲. می نِشینَند
۳. بِرَوید
٤. بُرو
٥. بِنشینید
٦. نکُنید
۷. بَرنَدار

B.

۱. بِهتَر or خوب تَر
۲. بِهتَرین or خوب تَرین
۳. نوتَر
٤. بُزُرگ تَرین
٥. بُلَندتَر
٦. قَدیمی تَرین

C.

۱. سِوُم
۲. پَنجُمین
۳. اوَّلین
٤. دُوُم
٥. هَشتُم

D.

۱. نُه صَد و نَوَد و نُه
۲. سیصَد و هِجدَه
۳. دویست و نوزدَه
٤. یِک هِزار و دویست و نوزدَه
٥. هَشتصَد و نُه

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Visit the website of Golestan Palace (http://www.golestanpalace.ir/), an old palace that was converted into a museum. Click on the link entitled مجموعه ها (which, as you should know, means *collections*). You will see a list of the names of the locations in the palace. Visit some of the locations and print out pictures of them for your language journal if you can. Also write down the name of each location. Then look at the English version of the site and try to visit the same locations on the English version. See if you can find out what some of the location names mean in English, and write those down in your journal, too.

LESSON

7

Arranging a Trip

In this lesson, you will learn about making travel arrangements. We also study counting units, the future tense and nationalities. But first, let's warm up with some new words and phrases.

7A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

agency	/ažans/	آژانس
if possible	/ægær momken æst/, /æge momken-e/	اگـَر مُمکِن است / اگه مُمکِنه
agent, responsible	/mæs'ul/	مَسؤول / مَسئول
travel, trip	/mosaferæt/, /sæfær/	مُسافِرَت، سَفـَر
week	/hæfte/	هـَفته

7B. DIALOGUE

Mani is calling a travel agent to book a flight for Jim and himself. He is planning to take Jim to Esfahan, one of the most ancient cities of Iran. Listen to Mani's telephone conversation with the travel agent.

مسؤول ِ آژانس: الو. آژانس ِ مسافِرَتی ِ سَفـَر ِ خوش. بفرمایین (بِفـَرمایید).

/mæs'ul-e ažans/: /ælo. ažans-e mosaferæti-ye sæfær-e xoš. befærma-yin (befærma-yid)./

مانی: سلام خانم. خـَسته نباشین (نباشید). می خواستـَم دو تا بلیت برای اِصفـَهان رزرو کـُنـَم.

/mani/: /sælam xanom. xæste næbašin (næbašid). mi-xast-æm do ta belit bæra-ye esfæhan rezerv kon-æm./

مسؤول ِ آژانس: بـَرای ِ چه تاریخی؟

/mæs'ul-e ažans/: /bæra-ye če tarix-i?/

C.

۱. سِوُم
۲. پَنجُمین
۳. اوُّلین
٤. دُوُمِ
٥. هَشتُم

D.

۱. نُه صَد و نَوَد و نُه
۲. سیصَد و هِجدَه
۳. دویست و نوزدَه
٤. یِک هِزار و دویست و نوزدَه
٥. هَشتصَد و نُه

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Visit the website of Golestan Palace (http://www.golestanpalace.ir/), an old palace that was converted into a museum. Click on the link entitled مجموعه ها (which, as you should know, means *collections*). You will see a list of the names of the locations in the palace. Visit some of the locations and print out pictures of them for your language journal if you can. Also write down the name of each location. Then look at the English version of the site and try to visit the same locations on the English version. See if you can find out what some of the location names mean in English, and write those down in your journal, too.

LESSON 7

Arranging a Trip

In this lesson, you will learn about making travel arrangements. We also study counting units, the future tense and nationalities. But first, let's warm up with some new words and phrases.

7A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

agency	/ažans/	آژانس
if possible	/ægær momken æst/, /æge momken-e/	اگه مُمکِنه / اگَـر مُمکِن است
agent, responsible	/mæs'ul/	مَسؤول / مَسئول
travel, trip	/mosaferæt/, /sæfær/	مُسافِرَت، سَفَر
week	/hæfte/	هَفته

7B. DIALOGUE

Mani is calling a travel agent to book a flight for Jim and himself. He is planning to take Jim to Esfahan, one of the most ancient cities of Iran. Listen to Mani's telephone conversation with the travel agent.

مسؤولِ آژانس: الو. آژانسِ مسافِرَتیِ سَفَرِ خوش. بفرمایین (بِفَرمایید).

/mæs'ul-e ažans/: /ælo. ažans-e mosaferæti-ye sæfær-e xoš. befærma-yin (befærma-yid)./

مانی: سلام خانم. خَسته نباشین (نباشید). می خواستَم دو تا بلیت برای اِصفَهان رزرو کُنَم.

/mani/: /sælam xanom. xæste næbašin (næbašid). mi-xast-æm do ta belit bæra-ye esfæhan rezerv kon-æm./

مسؤولِ آژانس: بَرایِ چه تاریخی؟

/mæs'ul-e ažans/: /bæra-ye če tarix-i?/

مانی: برای چهارشنبه ی هفته ی آینده.

/mani/: /bæra-ye čæhar-šænbe-ye hæfte-ye ayænde./

مسؤولِ آژانس: یَعنی بیستُمِ تیر؟

/mæs'ul-e ažans/: /yæ'ni bist-om-e tir?/

مانی: بَله، بیستُم اگه مُمکِنه.

/mani/: /bæle, bist-om æge momken-e./

مسؤولِ آژانس: متأسِّفانه، برای بیستُم جا نیست. بیست و یکم چطوره؟

/mæs'ul-e ažans/: /mote'ssefane, bæra-ye bist-om ja nist. bist o yek-om če-tor-e?/

مانی: نه، بیست و یکم دیره. نوزدَهُم چطور؟ جا هَست؟

/mani/: /bist o yek-om dir-e. nuzdæh-om če-tor? ja hæst?/

مسؤولِ آژانس: بله، خوشبَختانه نوزدَهُم مُمکِنه. کِی بر می گردین (بَرمی گَردید)؟

/mæs'ul-e ažans/: /bæle, xošbæxt-ane nuzdæh-om momken-e. key bær mi-gærd-in (bær mi-gærd-id)?/

مانی: جُمعه بَرخواهیم گَشت.

/mani/: /jom'e bær xah-im gæšt./

مسؤولِ آژانس: بسیار خوب، اسمتون چیه؟

/mæs'ul-e ažans/: /besiyar xob, esm-etun čiye?/

مانی: مانیِ پیامی و جیم داگلاس.

/mani/: /mani-ye pæyami væ jim daglas./

مسؤولِ آژانس: آقای داگلاس کجایی هَستَن؟

/mæs'ul-e ažans/: /aqa-ye daglas koja-yi hæst-æn?/

مانی: کانادایی.

/mani/: /kanada-yi./

Travel agent: Hello! Pleasant Trip Travel Agency. How can I help you?

Mani: Hello, ma'am. I want to reserve two tickets for Esfahan.

Travel agent: For what date?

Mani:	For the Wednesday of next week.
Travel agent:	That is the twentieth of Tir?
Mani:	Yes, the twentieth, if possible.
Travel agent:	Unfortunately, there're no seats available (*lit.*, there's no room) for the twentieth. How about the twenty-first?
Mani:	No, the twenty-first is too late. How about the nineteenth? Are there any seats available? (*lit.*, Is there room?)
Travel agent:	Yes, fortunately, the nineteenth is possible. When are you coming back?
Mani:	We will return on Friday.
Travel agent:	Very well. What are your names?
Mani:	Mani Payami and Jim Douglas.
Travel agent:	Where is Mr. Douglas from?
Mani:	He's Canadian.

Spelling Note: The letter ئـ (called هَمزِه /hæmze/) and its capital form, ئ, stand for the sound /'/ in the middle and at the end of the words, respectively. However, when this sound (/'/) is followed by the vowel /u/, it may be written as ؤ. Newer Farsi writing standards require the use of ؤ before the vowel /o/, and older standards used ئـ. That is why the word for *agent* has two spellings—مسؤول and مَسئول (/mæs'ul/). The same sound when followed by the vowel /æ/ comes in this form: أ. We saw this in the word مُتِأسِّفانه (/mote'æssef-ane/, unfortunately).

Usage Note: You may have noticed that an English translation is not provided for the expression خَسته نباشید (/xæste næ-baš-id/). That's because there is no good translation for this expression. The closest would be *greetings*, which isn't really that close. The adjective خَسته (/xæste/) means *tired*, and the verb نَباشید (/næ-baš-id/) is the negative subjunctive form of the verb بودن (/bud-æn/, to be), inflected for the second person plural. This verb literally means *may you not be*. The literal meaning of the whole expression is then *May you not be tired*. This is a form of greeting very commonly used when initiating a conversation with someone who's working. It's close to the English expression *more power to your elbow* in meaning but is different in usage. The English expression is quite rare and is never used as a greeting.

Comprehension Practice

A. How many tickets does Mani want to reserve?

۱. یِک ۲. دو ۳. سه

B. Where does Mani plan to go?

۱. تورنتو ۲. شیراز ۳. اصفهان

C. Why can't he leave on the twentieth?

۱. جا نیست. ۲. بیستُم دیره. ۳. او در تهران نیست.

D. Can he leave on the twenty-first?

۱. بَله. ۲. نَخِیر. بیست و یکُم دیره. ۳. نَخِیر. مانی آن روز در مسافِرَته.

E. What day of the week will Mani return?

۱. چهارشَنبه ۲. پَنجشَنبه ۳. جُمعه

7C. VOCABULARY

future, next	/ayænde/	آیَنده
hello (for telephone conversations)	/ælo/	اَلو
for	/bæra-ye/	برایِ
ticket	/belit/	بِلیت / بِلیط
date	/tarix/	تاریخ
fortunately	/xoš-bæxt-ane/	خوشبَختانه
to reserve	/rezerv kærd-æn/	رِزِرو کَردَن
unfortunately	/mote'æssef-ane/	مُتأسِفانه
week	/hæfte/	هَفته
next week	/hæfte-ye ayænde/	هَفته ی آیَنده

7D. KEY PHRASES

bus	/oto-bus/	اُتوبوس
weekend	/axær-e hæfte/	آخَرِ هَفته
to stay	/eqamæt kærd-æn/	اِقامَت کَردَن
to pay	/pærdaxt kærd-æn/	پَرداخت کَردَن
flight	/pærvaz/	پَرواز
to fly	/pærvaz kærd-æn/	پَرواز کَردَن

the day after tomorrow	/pæs færda/	پَس فَردا
money	/pul/	پول
to pay	/pul dad-æn/	پول دادَن
taxi	/taksi/	تاکسی
holidays, vacation	/tæ'tilat/	تعطیلات
to make a phone call	/telefon kærd-æn/, /telefon zæd-æn/	تِلِفُن کَردَن / زَدَن
tour	/tur/	تور
check	/ček/	چِک
to give	/dad-æn/	دادَن
to see	/did-æn/	دیدَن
to visit	/did-æn kærd-æn/	دیدَن کَردَن
tomorrow	/færda/	فَردا
train	/qætar/	قَطار
fare	/keraye/	کِرایه
ship	/kæšti/	کَشتی
excursion	/gærd-eš/	گَردِش
month	/mah/	ماه
place to stay, accommodations	/mæhæll-e eqamæt/	مَحَلِّ اِقامَت
traveler	/mosafer/	مُسافِر
to take a trip, to travel	/mosaferæt kærd-æn/, /mosaferæt ræft-æn/	مُسافِرَت کَردَن / رفتَن
cost	/hæzine/	هَزینه
airplane	/hæva-peyma/	هَواپِیما

7E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

The Persian Calendar

Iranians use an ancient calendar that marks the beginning of the year on the first day of spring. The idea is that the rebirth of nature is also the start of a new year. The calendar is very orderly in terms of the number of days in each month—the first six months of the year each have thirty-one days; the next five months have thirty days, and the last month has twenty-nine days, except on leap years, when it has thirty days. Seasons

change every three months, which means the beginnings of the first, fourth, seventh, and tenth months coincide with the beginning of a new season, so you won't have to keep reminding yourself what the official season is all the time.

Even though the calendar itself is ancient, the number of the year in the calendar was adjusted after the advent of Islam to the year when prophet Muhammad migrated from Mecca to Medina (the *Hijra*). In order to find out what year it is in the Persian calendar, you need to subtract 622 from the Common Era year if it is before March 20th, and after March 20th, you should subtract 621. For example, from January 1st to March 20th, 2007, it is the year 1385 in Iran, and from March 21st to December 31st, 2007, it is the year 1386. You can convert dates from any common calendar to another at http://www.calendarhome.com/converter/.

Below is the list of months and seasons in the Persian calendar.

THE PERSIAN CALENDAR

ماه ها (/MAH-HA/, MONTHS)	فَصل ها (/FÆSL-HA/, SEASONS)
۱. فَروَردین (/færværdin/)	بَهار (/bæhar/, spring)
۲. اُردیبهِشت (/ordibehešt/)	
۳. خُرداد (/xordad/)	
٤. تیر (/tir/)	تابِستان (/tabestan/, summer)
٥. مُرداد (/mordad/)	
٦. شَهریوَر (/šæhrivær/)	
۷. مِهر (/mehr/)	پاییز (/payiz/, fall)
۸. آبان (/aban/)	
۹. آذر (/azær/)	
۱۰. دِی (/dey/)	زمِستان (/zemestan/, winter)
۱۱. بَهمَن (/bæhmæn/)	
۱۲. اِسفَند (/esfænd/)	

The first day of the week, and also the first workday, is Saturday, and the last day of the week, the weekend, is Friday. Here is a list of the days of the week.

Saturday	/šænbe/	شَنبه
Sunday	/yek-šænbe/	یکشَنبه
Monday	/do-šænbe/	دوشَنبه
Tuesday	/se-šænbe/	سه شَنبه
Wednesday	/čæhar-šænbe/	چهارشَنبه
Thursday	/pænj-šænbe/	پنجشَنبه
Friday	/jom'e/	جُمعه

7F. GRAMMAR

Counting Units

In the dialogue, when Mani wants to refer to *two tickets*, he doesn't just say دو بِلیت (/do belit/); he says دو تا بِلیت (/do ta belit/). The word تا (/ta/) here is not a preposition meaning *until* or *to*; it is a counting word that means *unit* or *number*. Even though it is correct to say دو بلیت (/do belit/), it is more common, especially in spoken language, to use a counting unit after numbers greater than one (and sometimes even with *one*). In informal spoken language, the most common counting unit is تا, but in written or more formal language, several others are used depending on the type of noun that is counted. Another common counting unit is عَدَد (/ædæd/, number). This counting unit is used in both spoken and written language.

Counting units are also used in English with mass nouns (nouns that don't have a plural form, e.g., *water* or *sand*). For example, in English we have expressions like *a glass of milk* or *a cup of coffee*, and not, typically, *a milk* or *a coffee*. Farsi uses counting units with all nouns. The counting unit تا is used with count nouns (those that do have a plural form), and other words describing the container are used with many mass nouns.

Here are some examples of count nouns used without any counting units and with تا and عَدَد.

(/do belit/) دو بلیت

(/do ta belit/) دو تا بلیت

(/do ædæd belit/) دو عدد بلیت

two tickets

(/se mašin/) سه ماشین

(/se ta mašin/) سه تا ماشین

(/se ædæd mašin/) سه عدد ماشین

three cars

(/čæhar otaq/) چهار اتاق

(/čæhar ta otaq/) چهار تا اتاق

(/čæhar ædæd otaq/) چهار عدد اتاق

four rooms

Future Tense

The future tense is most often used to refer to future events. In English, we make future tense sentences by using the modal auxiliary verb *will* and the base form of the main verb, e.g., *I will get a haircut tomorrow.* We also use the expression *to be going to* for this purpose, e.g., *I'm going to get a haircut tomorrow.* In spoken English, we even use the simple present tense or the present progressive tense to refer to future events, as in, *I'm getting a haircut tomorrow*, or, *I'm out of town tomorrow.*

In Farsi, the proper future tense is almost exclusively used in writing. In spoken Farsi, the simple present tense is the more common tense used to refer to future events. We make the proper future tense by using the present stem of the verb خواستَن (/xast-æn/)—i.e., خواه (/xah/)—inflected for person and number, plus the past stem of the main verb with no inflection. For example, let's conjugate the verb رَفتَن (/ræft-æn/, to go) in the future tense. Recall that the past stem of the verb رَفتَن is رَفت (/ræft/).

THE VERB رَفتَن (/ræft-æn/, to go) IN THE FUTURE TENSE

I will go	/xah-æm ræft/	خواهَم رَفت
you (*sg.*) will go	/xah-i ræft/	خواهی رَفت
he/she/it will go	/xah-æd ræft/	خواهَد رَفت
we will go	/xah-im ræft/	خواهیم رَفت
you (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) will go	/xah-id ræft/	خواهید رَفت
they (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) will go	/xah-ænd ræft/	خواهَند رَفت

As mentioned above, in spoken language, we can simply use the present habitual form to refer to future events, as in:

می رَوَم، می رَوی، می رَوَد، می رَویم، می رَوید، می رَوَند
/mi-ræv-æm/, /mi-ræv-i/, /mi-ræv-æd/, /mi-ræv-im/, /mi-ræv-id/, /mi-ræv-ænd/

Note 1: Just like other verbs, the auxiliary and main verbs together come after the object. For example, in the sentence مَن دَرس خواهَم خواند (/mæn dærs xah-æm xand/, I will study; *lit.*, I will read lessons), the object is دَرس (/dærs/, lesson), and it precedes the verbal group خواهَم خواند (/xah-æm xand/, will study).

Note 2: If the verb is a phrasal verb (i.e., a verb with a particle), such as the Farsi verb بَرگَشتَن (/bær gæšt-æn/, to return) or بَرداشتَن (/bær dašt-æn/, to pick up, to take), then the auxiliary verb خواه (/xah/) can come either before or after the particle; e.g., both بَرخواهیم گَشت (/bær xah-im gæšt/) and خواهیم بَرگَشت (/xah-im bær gæšt/) are correct for *We will return.* The form خواهیم بَرگَشت (/xah-im bær gæšt/) is, however, more often used in formal language and in writing than in informal speech.

Note 3: When using adverbs in a sentence, it is common to place the adverb either immediately after the subject or at the very beginning of the sentence, as in the examples below.

مَن فَردا بَرخواهَم گَشت.
/mæn færda bær xah-æm gæšt./
I will return tomorrow.

فَردا، مَن بَرخواهَم گَشت.
/færda, mæn bær xah-æm gæšt./
Tomorrow, I will return.

To negate a future tense sentence, you only need to negate the auxiliary خواه, not the main verb, as in the examples below.

مَن فردا نخواهَم رفت.
/mæn færda næ-xah-æm ræft./
I won't go tomorrow.

آنها روزِ جمعه بَرنخواهَند گَشت.
/anha ruz-e jom'e bær næ-xah-ænd gæšt./
They won't return on Friday.

Nationalities

Words that refer to people's nationalities and places of origin or residence are extremely easy to make in Farsi. All you need to do is add the suffix ی (/-i/) to the place name. For example, if someone is from تِهران (/tehran/, Tehran), then that person is تِهرانی (/tehran-i/, Tehrani). Here are some other examples.

آلمان (/alman/, Germany) ← آلمانی (/alman-i/, German)
سوئِد (/su'ed'/, Sweden) ← سوئِدی (/su'ed-i/, Swedish)
نیویورک (/niyu york/, New York) ← نیویورکی (/niyu york-i/, from New York)

(/esfæhan-i/, Esfahani) اصفهانی ← (/esfæhan/, Esfahan) اصفهان

Note 1: If the place name ends in a vowel sound other than /i/ and /e/, then the suffix ی (/-i/) becomes یی (/-yi/) or, according to older grammar standards, ئی (/-'i/). Look at the examples that follow.

(/amrika-yi/, American) آمریکایی ← (/amrika/, America) آمریکا
(/kanada-yi/, Canadian) کانادایی ← (/kanada/, Canada) کانادا
(/peru-yi/, Peruvian) پرویی ← (/peru/, Peru) پرو
(/espania-yi/, Spanish) اسپانیایی ← (/espania/, Spain) اسپانیا
(/kongo-yi/, Congolese) کُنگویی ← (/kongo/, Congo) کُنگو

Note 2: If the place name ends in the vowel /i/, then the suffix ی (/-i/) becomes ـایی (/-ayi/) or, according to older standards, ـائی (/-a'i/), as in the examples below.

(/malezi-ayi/, Malaysian) مالزیایی ← (/malezi/, Malaysia) مالزی
(/ændonezi-ayi/, Indonesian) آندونزیایی ←
(/ændonezi/, Indonesia) آندونزی

Note 3: If the place name ends in the vowel /e/, then the /e/ is deleted and the suffix ی (/-i/) becomes َوی (/-ævi/). See the example below.

(/færans-ævi/, French) فَرانسَوی ← (/færanse/, France) فَرانسه

7G. READING

The following passage is about the Persian New Year.

نوروز

ایرانیان جَشنِ سالِ نو را نوروز می نامَند. نوروز یک جَشنِ خیلی قَدیمی است و در اولین روز سال، یَعنی اولِ فَروَردین، شُروع می شَوَد. جَشنِ نوروز ۱۳ روز است. مَردُم در این زمان به دیدَنِ یکدیگَر یا به مُسافِرَت می رَوَند. دَر روزِ سیزدَهُمِ سالِ نو، همه به پیک نیک می رَوَند. کودَکان در این سیزدَه روز به مَدرسه نِمی رَوَند ولَی دَر چَهاردَهُمین روزِ سال همه به مَدرسه بَرخواهَند گَشت.

Noruz

Iranians call their New Year's celebration *Noruz* (/noruz/). Noruz is a very old celebration and begins on the first day of the year—that is, Farvardin 1. Noruz celebrations take thirteen days. During this time, people visit each other or go on trips. On the thirteenth day, everyone goes on a picnic. Children do not go to school on these thirteen days, but on the fourteenth day, everyone returns (*lit.*, will return) to school.

picnic	/piknik/	پیک نیک
celebration	/jæšn/	جَشن
time	/zæman/	زَمان
to begin	/šoru' šod-æn/	شُروع شُدَن
child	/kudæk/	کودَک
to name, to call	/nam-id-æn/	نامیدَن
Persian New Year (*lit.*, new day)	/no-ruz/	نوروز
all, everyone	/hæme/	هَمه
each other, one another	/yek-digær/	یِکدیگَر

7H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

The Persian New Year

The biggest Persian celebration is Noruz, which you read a little about in the preceding passage. Because it is an ancient celebration, Noruz has a lot of mythology around it, and no one exactly knows when and how it started. However, it is now one of the most important celebrations in Western Asia. Noruz has always been celebrated at the beginning of spring, and in Iran and Afghanistan it marks the official beginning of a new year. At Noruz, people set a special symbolic table, called هَفت سین (/hæft sin/, the seven Ss), with seven items, the name of each of which starts with the letter س (سین). Each item symbolizes something. This setting also includes a bowl of water, symbolizing light, and a fishbowl containing a goldfish. There is often a Koran or a book of poetry present, depending on the religious beliefs of the family celebrating.

There are two other celebrations in Iran that occur close to Noruz and are considered parts of, or at least very close to, the same ancient tradition. The first one is called چهارشنبه سوری (/čæhar-šænbe sur-i/). The word سور (/sur/) in Farsi means *banquet, feast,* or *festival.* چهارشنبه سوری is a celebration that happens on the eve of the last Wednesday of the Persian year (i.e., mid-March). During چهارشنبه سوری, people make bonfires and jump over them. They play games, and children sometimes dress up and engage in an activity similar to the Halloween tradition of trick-or-treating. The second celebration that is close to Noruz, and was mentioned in the preceding passage, is called سیزده به دَر (/sizde be dær/, outdoor thirteen). This celebration happens on the thirteenth day of the month of Farvadin, فَرورَدین (/færværdin/, the first month of the Persian calendar). The idea behind it is that people should leave the house on the thirteenth day of the year to take bad luck away from the

house. This custom has now turned into a national picnic day when people will have a picnic pretty much anywhere a little grass can be found.

Another important and old Persian celebration called شَبِ یَلدا (/šæb-e yælda/) happens at the winter solstice. On this night, families gather together, play games, and eat a lot of pomegranates, nuts, watermelon, and fish. They try to stay up as long as they can and have fun. For more information about Noruz and other Persian celebrations, visit http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Noruz.

Exercises

A. Fill in the blanks using the words given.

شما　خواهَند　تا　فَرَوَردین　خُرداد　آینده

۱. مَن سه ________ کتاب خَریدَم.
۲. ما ماهِ________ به اصفهان می رَویم.
۳. ________ چَند عدد بلیت می خواهید؟
٤. سومین ماهِ سال ________ است.
٥. آنها در روز بیست و یکم ________ بَرگَشت.

B. Write the proper future tense of these sentences.

۱. فرهاد فردا به دانشگاه نمی رود.
۲. مانی و جیم چه روزی به اصفهان می روند؟
۳. ما ترمِ آینده فارسی برنمی داریم.
٤. شَبنَم تا ساعَتِ پَنج به اینجا می آیَد. (آمَدَن: /amæd-æn/, to come)
٥. این درس را امروز می خوانَم.

C. Write the correct tense of the verb for these sentences.

۱. ما دیروز به آژانس تلفن (کردن) ________.
۲. پِدَرَم فردا به مدرسه (رَفتَن)________.
۳. من هفته ی آینده سه تا بلیت برای نیویورک (خَریدَن) ________.
٤. شما هَرروز چه ساعَتی ناهار (خوردَن)________؟
٥. آنها ماهِ آینده در کُدام هُتِل اقامَت (کردن)________؟

D. Write the nationality of a person from each of the following countries.

۱. آمریکا: ________

۲. انگلیس: ________
۳. پاکِستان (/pakestan/, Pakistan): ________
٤. مِکزیک (/mekzik/, Mexico): ________
٥. کانادا: ________
۳. هِند (/hend/, India): ________
٤. هُلَند (/holænd/, Holland): ________

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 2　B. 3　C. 1　D. 2　E. 3

Exercises

A.

۱. تا　۲. آینده　۳. شما　٤. خُرداد　٥. خواهَند

B.

۱. فرهاد فردا به دانشگاه نخواهد رفت.
۲. مانی و جیم چه روزی به اصفهان خواهند رفت؟
۳. ما ترمِ آینده فارسی بر نخواهیم داشت. or
ما ترمِ آینده فارسی نخواهیم برداشت.
٤. شبنم تا ساعتِ پنج به اینجا خواهد آمد.
٥. این درس را امروز خواهم خواند.

C.

۱. کردیم　۲. خواهدرفت. or می رود.　۳. خواهم خرید or می خرم
٤. می خورید　٥. خواهند کرد or می کنند

D.

۱. آمریکایی　۲. انگلیسی　۳. پاکستانی　٤. مکزیکی
٥. کانادایی　٦. هندی　۷. هلندی

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Imagine that you are planning a trip to or around Iran. Visit http://www.hotelbooking.ir/ and start searching for a hotel. Under the heading جستجو (/jost-o-ju/, search), select the name of a city. By the way, what do you think شهر های دیگر (/šæhr-ha-ye digær/) means? Print out your hotel search results for your language journal if you can. Then pick a few hotels that you like and start circling the words that you can recognize in their descriptions. Finally, select your favorite hotel description and try to look up some of the unknown words in the online dictionary http://www.farsidic.com/. On this website, you will see a virtual Farsi keyboard that allows you to enter Farsi text. Bookmark this website; you will find it very useful.

LESSON

8

Does This Fit Me?

In this lesson we will learn about shopping for clothes, store types, and prices. We will also learn about subjunctives and first person imperatives, as well as the past habitual tense and object clitics.

8A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

Does it fit me?	/be mæn mi-ay-æd?/, /be-hem mi-yad?/	به من می آید؟، بِهِم میاد؟
to wear (clothes)	/puš-id-æn/	پوشیدَن
to shop	/xær-id kærd-æn/	خَرید کَردَن
color	/ræng/	رَنگ
to think	/fekr kærd-æn/	فِکر کَردَن
suit (*lit.*, coat and trousers)	/kot o šælvar/	کُت و شَلوار

8B. DIALOGUE

Mani and Shabnam are out shopping. Mani wants to go to his favorite boutique to buy a suit. Listen to his conversation with Shabnam, who is being a little playful today.

مانی: این بوتیکی است که هَمیشه اَزَش خرید می کُنَم.

/mani/: /in butik-i æst ke hæmiše æz-æš xær-id mi-kon-æm./

شبنم: اینجاست؟ مَن هَمیشه فِکر می کَردَم که تو از اون یکی مغازه خَرید می کَردی.

/šæbnæm/: /in-ja-st? mæn hæmiše fekr mi-kærd-æm ke to æz un yek-i mæqaze xær-id mi-kærd-i./

مانی: نه. مَن هیچوَقت اونجا نِمی رَم. بِریم تو؟

/mani/: /næ. mæn hič-væqt un-ja ne-mi-ræm. be-r-im tu?/

شبنم:	بریم. مَن نمی دونِستَم (نمی دانستم) که اینجا بوتیک هَست.
/šæbnæm/:	/berim. mæn ne-mi-dun-est-æm (ne-mi-dan-est-æm) ke in-ja butik hæst./
مانی:	این کُت و شَلواره چطوره؟ بِهِم میاد (به من میاید)؟
/mani/:	/in kot o šælvar-e če-tor-e? beh-em mi-a-d (be mæn mi-ay-æd)?/
شبنم:	آره. خیلی قَشَنگه. بِخَرِش.
/šæbnæm/:	/are. xeyli qæšæng-e be-xær-eš./
مانی:	بگذار این یکی رو هَم امتحان بِکُنَم.
/mani/:	/be-gozar in yek-i ro hæm emtehan be-kon-æm./
شبنم:	نه، بِهِت نمیاد (به تو نمیاید). بِگذارش سَر جاش.
/šæbnæm/:	/næ, beh-et ne-mi-a-d (be to ne-mi-ay-æd). be-gozar-eš sær-e ja-š./
مانی:	ولی تو همیشه رنگِ آبی دوست داشتی.
/mani/:	/væli to hæmiše ræng-e abi dust dašt-i./
شبنم:	رنگ آبی دوست دارَم، وَلی کُت و شَلوار آبی اصلاً دوست نَدارَم.
/šæbnæm/:	/ræng-e abi dust dar-æm, væli kot o šælvar-e abi æsl-æn dust næ-dar-æm./
مانی:	یَعنی نَپوشَمِش؟
/mani/:	/yæ'ni næ-puš-æm-eš?/
شبنم:	نه، نَپوشِش. اون قِرمِزه خیلی بِهتَر بود.
/šæbnæm/:	/næ, næ-puš-eš. un qermez-e xeyli beh-tær bud./

Mani:	This is the boutique that I always shop at.
Shabnam:	Is it here? I always thought that you shopped at that other store.
Mani:	No. I never go there. Should we go in?
Shabnam:	Let's go. I didn't know there was a boutique here.
Mani:	How's this suit? Does it fit me?
Shabnam:	Yeah. It's really pretty. Buy it.

Mani:	Let me try this one, too.
Shabnam:	No, that doesn't suit you. Put it back (*lit.*, Put it back at its place).
Mani:	But you always liked the blue color.
Shabnam:	I like the blue color, but I don't like blue suit at all.
Mani:	You mean I shouldn't wear it?
Shabnam:	No, don't wear it. That red one was much better.

Spelling Note: The word اَصلاً (/æsl-æn/, at all), which is a borrowed word from Arabic, has an unexpected pronunciation. Although it is spelled with ا (/a/), the /a/ is pronounced /æn/. The diacritic ً when placed over ا signals this pronunciation. In everyday writing, however, the diacritic ً, like other diacritics, does not typically show up.

Comprehension Practice

Now answer the following questions based on the dialogue.

A. At what type of store does Mani usually shop for clothes?

۱. فُروشگاه ۲. بوتیک ۳. مَغازه

B. What color is the suit that Mani tries on first?

۱. قِرمِز ۲. سِفید ۳. آبی

C. What does Shabnam say about the blue suit?

۱. خیلی قَشَنگه. بِخَرِش ۲. بِهِت نمیاد. ۳. تو رَنگِ آبی دوست داری.

D. How does Shabnam tell Mani, *Don't wear it*?

۱. نَپوشِش ۲. بِپوشِش ۳. می پوشی

E. What does Shabnam say about blue suits?

۱. کُت و شَلوارِ آبی خیلی قَشَنگه. ۲. کُت و شَلوارِ آبی به مَن نِمیاد. ۳. کُت و شَلوارِ آبی اَصلاً دوست نَدارم.

8C. VOCABULARY

blue	/abi/	آبی
boutique	/butik/	بوتیک
yellow	/zærd/	زَرد
green	/sæbz/	سَبز
white	/sefid/	سِفید

black	/siyah/	سیاه
trousers, pants	/šælvar/	شَلوار
grey	/tusi/, /xakestær-i/	طوسی، خاکِستَری
red	/qermez/	قِرمِز
brown	/qæhve-'i/	قَهوه ای
coat	/kot/	کُت
always	/hæmiše/	هَمیشه
never	/hič-væqt/	هیچوَقت

8D. KEY PHRASES

These blouses are twenty percent off.	/in boluz-ha bist dær-sæd tæxfif dar-ænd./	این بلوز ها بیست دَرصَد تَخفیف دارند.
How much is this?	/in čænd-e?/	این چَنده؟
Are these clothes on sale?	/in lebas-ha hæraj hæst-ænd (hæraj-ænd)?/	این لباس ها حَراج هستَند(حراجند)؟
raincoat	/baran-i/, /barun-i/	بارانی، بارونی
child	/bæčče/	بَچّه
blouse	/boluz/	بلوز
winter coat	/palto/	پالتو
boot	/putin/	پوتین
shirt	/pirahæn/, /pirhæn/	پیراهَن، پیرهن
discount	/tæxfif/	تَخفیف
sock, stocking	/jurab/	جوراب
skirt	/damæn/	دامَن
percent	/dær-sæd/	دَرصَد
slipper	/dæm-pa-yi/	دَمپایی
jacket	/kapšen/	کاپشِن
shoe	/kæfš/	کَفش
hat, cap	/kolah/	کُلاه
some, a little	/kæm-i/	کَمی

clothes	/lebas/	لِباس
Can I look at that skirt?	/mi-tævan-æm/ an damæn ra be-bin-æm?/, /mi-tun-æm un damæn ro be-bin-æm?/	می توانم آن دامن را ببینم؟ می تونَم اونِ دامَن رو ببینَم؟

8E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Iranian Currency

The official Iranian currency is the rial (ریال) /riyal/. At this time, each American dollar can buy about nine thousand rials. In everyday conversation, however, people don't use the term ریال very often. Instead, Farsi speakers usually use the term تومان (/tuman/ or, colloquially, /tomæn/), which refers to ten rials. So you might hear people say, for example, that an American dollar is نُهصَد تومان (/noh-sæd tuman/, nine hundred tumans), as opposed to نُه هِزار ریال (/noh hezar riyal/, nine thousand rials). The term تومان is gradually coming into use in official language as well.

8F. GRAMMAR

The Subjunctive Mood

In Lesson 6 we talked about imperatives. We learned that imperatives in Farsi are inflected for second person singular and plural and that they are made by adding the prefix بِـ (/be-) to the present stem of the verb (e.g., بِبین /be-bin/ for *Look!*), and in the case of second person plural, we also add the second person plural ending ید (/-id/) to the stem—e.g., بِبینید /be-bin-id/, *Look* (you, *pl.*)! Sentences that are inflected like this are said to be in the *imperative mood.*

In Farsi, the subjunctive mood, which refers to hypothetical situations, is very close to the imperative mood in its form. English uses the subjunctive in limited contexts. For example, when you say something like, *The judge demanded that he **stay** in prison,* you are using the verb *stay* in the subjunctive mood (note that you are not saying . . . *that he stays* . . . , which shows that the verb is not in the declarative mood).

In Farsi, subjunctives are used in a variety of contexts: in conditional sentences (Lesson 11), in embedded clauses and with modal auxiliaries (Lesson 13), and in first person imperatives (this lesson). The subjunctive mood in Farsi is simply made with the prefix بِـ (/be-/) plus the present stem of the verb plus these subject endings:

ـَم، ی، ـَد، یم، ید، ـَند
/-æm/, /-i/, /-æd/, /-im/, /-id/, /-ænd/

As an example, let's see the verb دیدَن (/did-æn/, to see) with the present stem بین (/bin/, see) conjugated in the subjunctive mood.

THE VERB دیدَن (/did-æn/, to see) IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

PLURAL		SINGULAR		
/be-bin-im/	بِبینیم	/be-bin-æm/	بِبینَم	1st person
/be-bin-id/	بِبینید	/be-bin-i/	بِبینی	2nd person
/be-bin-ænd/	بِبینَند	/be-bin-æd/	بِبینَد	3rd person

Look especially at the first person singular and plural. The first person subjunctive in Farsi is used for first person imperatives; thus, the verbs ببینم (/be-bin-æm/) and بِبینیم (/be-bin-im/) can be translated to *Let me see/I should see* and *Let us see/We should see*, respectively.

Pronunciation Note: If the first vowel in the verb stem is /o/, then the prefix بِ (/be-/) sometimes becomes بُ (/bo-/) in colloquial language. For example, the imperative form of the verb رَفتَن (/ræft-æn/, to go) is pronounced as بُرو (/bo-ro/, Go!) and not (/be-ro/). This phenomenon is less frequent in educated speech.

Grammar Note: In the case of phrasal verbs, as in بَرداشتَن (/bær dašt-æn/, to pick up, to take), the prefix بِ is not used—e.g., بَرداریم (/bær dar-im/) and not بَربِداریم (/bær be-dar-im/).

In the opening dialogue of this lesson, we hear Mani and Shabnam say بِریم (/be-r-im/), which is the spoken form of the verb بِرَویم (/be-ræv-im/). When you use this verb as a question, as in بریم؟ (/be-r-im?/), you are saying *Shall we go?* And when you say it as a response, as in بریم (/be-r-im/), you are saying *Let's go.* Now here are some more examples:

ناهار بخوریم؟
/nahar be-xor-im?/
Shall we have lunch?

ناهار بخوریم.
/nahar be-xor-im./
Let's have lunch.

کِتاب بِخوانیم؟
/ketab be-xan-im?/
Shall we read a book?

کِتاب بِخوانیم.
/ketab be-xan-im./
Let's read a book.

به مانی تِلِفُن بِزَنیم؟
/be mani telefon be-zæn-im?/
Shall we phone Mani?

به مانی تِلِفُن بِزَنیم.
/be mani telefon be-zan-im./
Let's phone Mani.

Past Habitual

The past habitual tense is used to talk about events that used to happen habitually in the past but no longer occur. In English, simple past tense verbs and the modal idiom *used to* are used for this purpose. For example, when passing by a school you might hear your friend say, *I went to school here when I was a kid*, or, *I used to go to school here when I was a kid.* Your friend is referring to a past habitual event.

In Farsi, the past habitual is just like the simple present except that the verb is in its past form. That is, we make past habitual verbs by adding the habitual prefix مى (/mi-/) to the beginning of the past stem of the verb. Of course, subject endings also need to be added based on person and number. Here is the conjugation of the verb خَریدَن (/xær-id-æn/, to buy) in the past habitual tense.

THE VERB خَریدَن (/xær-id-æn/, to buy) IN THE PAST HABITUAL TENSE

I used to buy	/mi-xær-id-æm/	مى خَریدَم	1st person	SINGULAR
you (*sg.*) used to buy	/mi-xær-id-i/	مى خَریدى	2nd person	
he/she/it used to buy	/mi-xær-id/	مى خَرید	3rd person	
we used to buy	/mi-xær-id-im/	مى خَریدیم	1st person	PLURAL
you (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) used to buy	/mi-xær-id-id/	مى خَریدید	2nd person	
they (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) used to buy	/mi-xær-id-ænd/	مى خَریدَند	3rd person	

Here are some sample sentences in the past habitual.

مَن هَمیشه با پِدَرَم به مَدرِسه مى رَفتَم.
/mæn hæmiše ba pedær-æm be mædrese mi-ræft-æm./
I always went/used to go to school with my father.

آنها هَر روز به اینجا می آمَدَند.
/an-ha hær ruz be inja mi-amæd-ænd./
They came/used to come here every day.

بَچّه ها می دَویدَند.
/bæčče-ha mi-dæv-id-ænd./
The children ran/used to run.

Object Endings on Verbs

Farsi verbs carry a lot of information. We know that verbs in Farsi are inflected for person using subject endings, as in می نِویسَم (/mi-nevis-æm/, I write—from نِوِشتَن /nevešt-æn/, to write) with the present stem نِویس (/nevis/). This allows us to drop the subject of the sentence if it is known.

You can also use *object endings* for known objects and do away with object pronouns. For example, in the opening dialogue of this lesson we heard Shabnam tell Mani,

نَپوشِش (instead of آن را نپوش)
/næ-puš-eš./
Don't wear it.

As you can see, sometimes a single Farsi verb carries as much information as a sentence does—for example, the verb

نمی پوشیدَمِش (instead of من آن را نمی پوشیدم)
/ne-mi-puš-id-æm-eš./
I didn't use to wear it.

The table below lists the object endings of Farsi.

OBJECT ENDINGS

/-eman/	ِمان	/-æm/, /-em/	َم، ِم	first
/-etan/	ِتان	/-æt/, /-et/	َت، ِت	second
/-ešan/	ِشان	/-æš/, /-eš/	َش، ِش	third

Grammar Note: These object endings can also be attached to prepositions. For example, به من (/be mæn/, to me) can be changed to بِهِم (/beh-em/, to me). In the dialogue, you heard Mani ask Shabnam, بِهِم میاد؟ (/beh-em mi-yad?/). This literally means *Does it come to me?* which is an idiom for *Does it fit me?*

Usage Note 1: As in the rest of the course, where there are two forms in the table above, the first form (with /æ/) is formal.

Usage Note 2: It is also possible to name both the object and the object

ending in a sentence for emphasis, e.g., مانی را، ندیدَمِش (/mani ra, næ-did-æm-eš/). This is roughly equivalent to saying, *Mani, I haven't seen him.*

Here are some examples of sentences containing object endings.

می بینَمِش.
/mi-bin-æm-eš./
I see it.

دادَمِشان به فرهاد.
/dad-æm-ešan be færhad./
I gave them to Farhad.

گذاشتیمشان روی میز.
/gozašt-im-ešan ruy-e miz./
We put them on the table.

ازَش دیدَن کردیم.
/æz-æš did-æn kærd-im./
We visited it. (*lit.*, We did visiting from it.)

نَخَریدَمِش.
/næ-xær-id-æm-eš./
I didn't buy it.

8G. READING

Read this ad for a clothing manufacturer.

لباسِ آرینَ
لباسِ آریَن یکی از قَدیمی ترینِ تولید کنندِگان لباس دَر ایران است. این شِرکَت لِباس های مَردانه و زَنانه تولِید می کُنَد. مَحصولاتِ ما شامِلِ کت و شلوار، کت و دامَن، پیراهَنِ مردانه و زنانه، بلوز و کاپشن است. قیمت های محصولاتِ ما پایین است و چندین بوتیک دَر تهران داریم.

قیمتِ کت و شلوارهایِ ما از ۸۰۰۰۰ تومان تا ۱۵۰۰۰۰ تومان است. دامن های ما از ۲۰۰۰۰ تا ۵۰۰۰۰ تومان هستند.

Arian Clothing
Arian Clothing is one of the oldest clothing manufacturers in Iran. This company produces men's and women's clothes. Our products include suits (*lit.*, jacket and trousers), skirt suits (*lit.*, jacket and skirt), shirts, dresses, and jackets. The prices of our products are low, and we have several boutiques in Tehran.

The prices of our suits are from 80,000 to 150,000 tumans. Our skirts are from 20,000 to 50,000 tumans.

manufacturer, producer	/tolid kon-ænde/	تولید کُنَنده
to manufacture, to produce	/tolid kærd-æn/	تولید کَردَن
several	/čændin/	چَندین
to include	/šamel bud-æn/	شامِل بودَن
product, products	/mahsul/, /mahsulat/	مَحصول، مَحصولات

8H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

What Do Iranians Typically Wear?

The way Iranians dress has changed dramatically and frequently in the last two centuries. During the Qajar (قاجار /qajar/) and Pahlavi (پَهلَوی /pæhlævi/) dynasties (the last two monarchic regimes before the 1979 revolution), the country underwent a remarkable modernization period. During this time, Western education and values gradually became a sign of social status. People dressed more and more like Europeans, and many women stopped wearing the traditional Islamic veil (albeit many by force during Reza Shah Pahlavi's reign, 1925–1941).

Since the 1979 revolution, however, the government has been trying to replace Western values with traditional Islamic ones. This clash of ideals has created a wide range of opinions among individuals about what people should wear. For example, wearing a tie may be considered a sign of etiquette, elegance, and professionalism by modernists, but it might be regarded as a sign of blind submission to Western values by fundamentalists. Wearing jeans and T-shirts may be viewed similarly. Younger, more liberal people like to dress in jeans and T-shirts, while traditionalists avoid that.

Nowadays, many men wear a shirt, a pair of long pants, and, if it's cold, a sports jacket. Government officials wear suits, but they don't wear ties. Wearing short-sleeved shirts by men is frowned on by the government, but many men do it anyway.

Women, by law, have to cover all their bodies and hair. Liberal and younger women wear tight and short *manteaus* together with jeans and colorful scarves. Women who work for the government have to wear loose and long *manteaus*, and they must cover their hair with larger scarves, called مَقنَعه (/mæqnæ'e/), that fit around the face. More traditional women wear large black sheets called چادُر (/čador/) and only show their faces. You can learn more about such cultural issues at http://www.cultureofiran.com.

Exercises

A. Use the subjunctive form of the verb in these sentences.

۱. ساعَتِ ۸:۰۰ شام (خوردَن) ________. (*pl.*)

۲. چه تاریخی به تهران (برگَشتَن)________؟ (*pl.*)

۳. کتابَت را (دیدَن) ________. (*sg.*)

٤. این پیراهن را (خریدَن) ________؟ (*sg.*)

٥. فَردا به موزه (رَفتَن)________؟ (*pl.*)

B. Use the correct form of the verb in parentheses in the following sentences.

۱. کفش های نوی ِ مَن قهوه ای (بودَن) ________.

۲. دیروز شیرین برای ِ بَرادَرَش یک پیراهن (خریدَن) ________.

۳. سال ِ گُذشته، ما زیاد به پارک (رفتَن) ________.

٤. فردا جیم به شما تلفن (زدن)________.

٥. من خیلی درس (خواندن)________.

C. Turn the objects of verbs and objects of prepositions in these sentences into object pronouns. The first one is done as an example.

کتاب ها را به مانی دادَم.

دادَمِشان بِهِش.

۱. کیفت را بگذار اینجا. ________.

۲. او را دیدم. ________.

۳. لباسش را شُست. ________.

٤. به آنها تلفن بزن. ________.

٥. روزنامه را می خواندَم. ________.

D. Fill in the blanks using the following words.

بِهِتان   کار   پِسر   کفاشی   شِشُمین   خواهَد

۱. شهریور ________ ماهِ سال است.

۲. این شلوار طوسی ________ میاید.

۳. فرهاد ________ شبنم است.

٤. او ساعتِ هفت از دانشگاه بَر ________ گَشت.

٥. این ساعت هیچوقت ________ نمی کُنَد.

٦. کفش را از ________ می خریم.

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 2 B. 1 C. 2 D. 1 E. 3

Exercises

A.

۱. بخوریم ۲. برگردیم ۳. ببینم ٤. بخرم ٥. برویم

B.

۱. هستند ۲. خرید ۳. می رفتیم ٤. خواهد زَد ٥. می خوانم

C.

۱. بگذارَش اینجا. ۲. دیدَمَش. ۳. شُستَش. ٤. بِهِشان تلفن بزن.
٥. می خواندَمَش.

D.

۱. ششمین ۲. بهتان ۳. پسر ٤. خواهد ٥. کار ٦. کفاشی

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Make a list of some articles of clothing that haven't been listed in this lesson. Try to look them up in the online Farsi dictionary www.farsidic.com. Write the words and the Farsi equivalents that you find in your language journal. Another online dictionary you can use can be found at www.aryanpour.com. This is also a very good dictionary that you might want to bookmark.

LESSON

9

Jim in a Persian Restaurant

In this lesson, you will learn about Persian food and restaurants. You will also learn to express likes and dislikes, as well as the equivalents of *both . . . and* and *neither . . . nor* constructions in Farsi. Finally, you will also learn how to use the subjunctive mood with the auxiliary verb شایَد (/šayæd/, may).

9A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

to recommend	/pišnæhad kærd-æn/	پیشنَهاد کَردَن
a (usually) meat sauce served over steamed rice	/xoreš/	خورش
fesenjan (a sauce made with chicken or beef, crushed walnuts, and pomegranate paste, served over rice)	/xoreš-e fesenjan/	خورشِ فِسِنجان
a drink made with yogurt, water, salt, and sometimes dried mint	/duq/	دوغ
salad	/salad/	سالاد
How about you?	/šoma če-tor?/	شُما چِطور؟
a rice dish with dill and broad beans, often served with beef	/ševid baqela/	شِوید باقِلا
food	/qæza/	غَذا
yogurt	/mast/	ماست
special occasion	/monasebæt-e xass/	مُناسِبَتِ خاصّ

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 2 B. 1 C. 2 D. 1 E. 3

Exercises

A.

۱. بخوریم ۲. برگردیم ۳. ببینم ٤. بخرم ٥. برویم

B.

۱. هستند ۲. خرید ۳. می رفتیم ٤. خواهد زَد ٥. می خوانم

C.

۱. بگذارَش اینجا. ۲. دیدَمَش. ۳. شُستَش. ٤. بِهِشان تلفن بزن.
٥. می خواندَمَش.

D.

۱. ششمین ۲. بهتان ۳. پسر ٤. خواهد ٥. کار ٦. کفاشی

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Make a list of some articles of clothing that haven't been listed in this lesson. Try to look them up in the online Farsi dictionary www.farsidic.com. Write the words and the Farsi equivalents that you find in your language journal. Another online dictionary you can use can be found at www.aryanpour.com. This is also a very good dictionary that you might want to bookmark.

LESSON

9

Jim in a Persian Restaurant

In this lesson, you will learn about Persian food and restaurants. You will also learn to express likes and dislikes, as well as the equivalents of *both . . . and* and *neither . . . nor* constructions in Farsi. Finally, you will also learn how to use the subjunctive mood with the auxiliary verb شایَد (/šayæd/, may).

9A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

to recommend	/pišnæhad kærd-æn/	پیشنَهاد کَردَن
a (usually) meat sauce served over steamed rice	/xoreš/	خورش
fesenjan (a sauce made with chicken or beef, crushed walnuts, and pomegranate paste, served over rice)	/xoreš-e fesenjan/	خورشِ فِسِنجان
a drink made with yogurt, water, salt, and sometimes dried mint	/duq/	دوغ
salad	/salad/	سالاد
How about you?	/šoma če-tor?/	شُما چِطور؟
a rice dish with dill and broad beans, often served with beef	/ševid baqela/	شِوید باقِلا
food	/qæza/	غَذا
yogurt	/mast/	ماست
special occasion	/monasebæt-e xass/	مُناسِبَتِ خاصّ

9B. DIALOGUE

Shabnam has taken Jim to a Persian restaurant. Listen to their conversation as they choose food from the menu.

جیم: چه رستورانِ قَشَنگی! شما زیاد اینجا میایین (میایید)؟

/jim/: /če resturan-e qæšæng-i! šoma ziyad inja mi-ya-in (mi-ya-id)?/

شبنم: زیاد نه. بیشتَر بَرایِ مُناسِبَت های خاصّ.

/šæbnæm/: /ziyad næ. bištær bæra-ye monasebæt-ha-ye xass./

جیم: خوب، چه غَذایی پیشنَهاد می کنی؟

/jim/: /xob, če qæza-yi piš-næhad mi-kon-i?/

شبنم: البَتِّه خورشِ فِسنجان اولین پیشنَهادِ مَنه.

/šæbnæm/: /ælbætte xoreš-e fesenjan ævvælin piš-næhad-e mæn-e./

جیم: توش (تویش) چیه؟

/jim/: /tu-š (tu-yæš) či-ye?/

شبنم: یه جور خورشه با گوشت. توش هم گِردو داره. گِردو دوست داری؟

/šæbnæm/: /yek jur xor-eš-e ba gušt. tu-š hæm gerdu dar-e. gerdu dust dar-i?/

جیم: البَتِّه! شُما چی می خوری؟

/jim/: /ælbætte! šoma či mi-xor-i?/

شبنم: من شایَد شِوید باقلا بِخورَم.

/šæbnæm/: /mæn šayæd ševid baqela be-xor-æm./

جیم: اون هَم خوبه. مَن هَم باقلا دوست دارَم، هَم گِردو.

/jim/: /un hæm xub-e. mæn hæm baqela dust dar-æm, hæm gerdu./

شبنم: نوشیدَنی چی می خواهی؟

/šæbnæm/: /nuš-id-æn-i či mi-xa-hi?/

جیم: اینجا دوغ دارَند؟ مَن دوغ خیلی دوست دارَم.

/inja duq darænd? mæn duq xeyli dust dar æm./ :/jim

شبنم: حتماً دارَند. مَن سالاد هَم می خوام (می خواهم). شما چطور؟ سالاد یا ماست می خواهین (می خواهید)؟

/hætmæn dar-ænd. mæn salad hæm mi-xam (mi-xah-æm). šoma če-tor? salad ya mast mi-xah-in (mi-xah-id)?/ :/šæbnæm/

جیم: مَن نه سالاد می خوا م، نه ماست.

/mæn næ salad mi-xah-æm, næ mast./ :/jim/

شبنم: مَن اینجا سَردَمه. شُما سَردِت نیست؟

/mæn inja særd-æm-e. šoma særd-et nist?/ :/šæbnæm/

جیم: چِرا. مَن هم سَردَمه. بریم اون طَرَف بشینیم (بِنشینیم).

/čera mæn hæm særd-æm-e. be-rim un tæræf be-šin-im (be-nešin-im)./ :/jim/

Jim:	What a pretty restaurant! Do you come here often?
Shabnam:	Not often. Mostly for special occasions.
Jim:	Okay, what (food) do you recommend?
Shabnam:	*Fesenjan* is my first recommendation, of course.
Jim:	What's in it?
Shabnam:	It's a sort of sauce with meat. It also has walnuts in it. Do you like walnuts?
Jim:	Of course. What are you having?
Shabnam:	I may have *shevid baqela.*
Jim:	That's good too. I like both walnuts and broad beans.
Shabnam:	What drink would you like?
Jim:	Do they have *duq* here? I like duq very much.
Shabnam:	They must. I also want salad. How about you? Do you want salad or yogurt?
Jim:	I want neither salad nor yogurt.
Shabnam:	I'm cold here. Aren't you cold?
Jim:	Yes. I'm cold, too. Let's go sit on the other side.

Usage Note: The word چِرا (/čera/) here means *yes*, but the difference between چرا and بله (/bæle/) is that چرا is used as a response to a negative question. Notice that Shabnam asks Jim,

شُما سَردِت نیست؟
/šoma særd-et nist?/
Aren't you cold?

This is a negative question, to which Jim responds,

چرا، من هم سَردَمه.
/čera, mæn hæm særd-æm-e./
Yes, I'm cold, too.

If Shabnam had asked, شما سردته؟ (/šoma særd-et-e?/, Are you cold?), a positive question, then Jim would have answered with بله (/bæle/).

Comprehension Practice

Now answer the following questions based on the dialogue you just practiced.

A. How often does Shabnam come to this restaurant?

۱. هَر هَفته ۲. برای ِ مُناسِبَت های خاص ۳. هیچوَقت

B. What food does Shabnam recommend to Jim?

۱. سالاد ۲. شوید باقلا ۳. خورش ِ فِسنجان

C. Which one of these items is in fesenjan?

۱. گِردو ۲. شِوید ۳. ماست

D. How does Jim ask what's in fesenjan?

۱. چی داری؟ ۲. توش چیه؟ ۳. چی می خوری؟

E. Which of the following does Jim like?

۱. گِردو ۲. باقِلا ۳. هَم گِردو، هَم باقِلا

9C. VOCABULARY

broad bean	/baqela/	باقِلا
plate	/bošqab/	بُشقاب
recommendation	/piš-næhad/	پیشنَهاد
yes (answer to a negative question)	/čera/	چِرا
fork	/čængal/	چَنگال
certainly	/hætm-æn/	حَتماً

cool (not warm)	/xonæk/	خُنَک
hot	/daq/	داغ
napkin	/dæst-mal/	دَستمال
to like	/dust dašt-æn/	دوست داشتَن
restaurant	/resturan/	رستوران
sandwich	/sandevič/	ساندویچ
cold	/særd/	سَرد
perhaps, maybe, may	/šayæd/	شایَد
dill	/ševid/	شِوید
spoon	/qašoq/	قاشُق
knife	/kard/	کارد
walnut	/gerdu/	گِردو
warm	/gærm/	گَرم
meat	/gušt/	گوشت
glass	/livan/	لیوان
fish	/mahi/	ماهی
chicken, hen	/morq/	مُرغ
fruit	/mive/	میوه
soft drink	/nuš-id-æn-i/	نوشیدَنی

9D. KEY PHRASES

cook	/aš-pæz/	آشپَز
Are you ready to order?	/amade hæst-id sefareš be-dæh-id?/, /amade hæst-in sefareš be-d-id?/	آماده هَستید سِفارش بِدهید؟، آماده هستین سفارش بدید؟
Excuse me, where's the restroom?	/be-bæxš-id, dæst-šu-yi koja-st?/, /be-bæxš-in, dæst-šu-yi koja-st?/	بِبَخشید، دَستشویی کُجاست؟، ببخشین، دستشویی کجاست؟
rice	/berenj/	بِرنج
waiter, waitress	/piš xedmæt/, /garson/	پیش خِدمَت، گارسون

What appetizer would you like?	/piš qæza či meyl dar-id?/, /piš qæza či meyl dar-in?/	پیش غَذا چی مِیل دارید؟، پیش غذا چی میل دارین؟
a dish made with steamed rice, beef kabob, and often grilled tomatoes	/čelo kæbab/	چِلوکَباب
How many people are you?, Party of how many?	/čænd næfær-id?/, /čænd næfær-in?/	چَند نَفَرید؟، چند نفرین؟
What would you like?	/či meyl dar-id?/	چی مِیل دارید؟
dessert	/deser/	دِسِر
chef	/sær aš-pæz/	سَرآشپَز
to order	/sefareš dad-æn/	سِفارش دادَن
to take an order	/sefareš gereft-æn/	سِفارش گِرِفتَن
main course	/qæza-ye æsli/	غذایِ اَصلی
Can you bring the bill, please?	/momken æst lotfæn suræt hesab ra bi-yavær-id?/, /momken-e lotfæn suræt hesab ro bi-ar-id?/	ممکنِ است لُطفاً صورت حِساب را بیاورید؟، مُمکِنه لُطفاً صورَت حِساب رو بیارید؟
Can you bring the menu, please?	/momken æst lotfæn suræt qæza ra bi-yavær-id?/, /momken-e lotfæn suræt-e qæza ro bi-ar-id?/	مُمکِنِ است لُطفاً صورَتِ غَذا را بیاورید؟، مُمکِنه لُطفاً صورَتِ غَذا رو بیارید؟
I'll have a chelo-kabob and a soda.	/mæn yek čelo-kæbab mi-xor-æm ba yek nušabe./	مَن یکِ چِلو کَباب می خورم با یک نوشابه.
bread	/nan/	نان
ice	/yæx/	یَخ

9E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Persian Table Manners

You learned earlier that Persians are very particular about how they show respect toward elders and guests. People of other nations, of course, respect

their elders and guests too, but they may do so differently. This also applies to etiquette at the dining table. When they want to sit at a dining table to eat, Iranians usually wait for the oldest person in the group or for any guests to sit first. You might hear a lot of بِفَرمایید (/be-færma-id/, after you).

Except for restaurants where the food comes in portions, the food is usually set in the middle of the table in large dishes, and everyone serves himself or herself the desired amount. Here, again, everyone waits for the oldest person or the guests to serve their food and start.

When people compliment the person who has made the food, that person usually responds by saying, نوشِ جان (/nuš-e jan/), which can roughly be translated as *bon appétit*. If you want to thank the person who has made the food, you can use the usual مِرسی (/mersi/, thanks) or خیلی ممنون (/xeyli mæmnun/, much appreciated). You can also use the more formal term for thanking, مُتُشَکِّرَم (/motošækker-æm/, I am thankful). Alternatively, you can use the very common idiom دَستِ شُما دَرد نَکُنه (/dæst-e šoma dærd nækon-e/). This idiom literally means *May your hand not hurt*, but it is just another way of saying *thank you*. This way, you are wishing someone well who has just done something for you. The expression is most suitable in the context of manual work, but it's by no means limited to such a situation. You can use the term in almost all situations.

9F. GRAMMAR

Expressing Likes and Dislikes

To say that they like or dislike something, Farsi speakers often use the verb دوست داشتَن (/dust dašt-æn/). This is a phrasal verb; that is, it is made up of a noun plus a "light" verb (see lesson 1). The noun part is دوست (/dust/, friend, fondness), and the verb part is داشتَن (/dašt-æn/, to have). داشتَن is an irregular verb, and the present stem of this verb is دار (/dar/, have). Therefore, دوست داشتَن literally means *to have a fondness for*. This verb does not appear in the habitual or progressive forms, but it can come in all other tenses. Here are two examples of the verb دوست داشتن, conjugated for all persons and for the present and past tenses.

THE VERB دوست داشتن (/dust dašt-æn/, to like) IN THE PRESENT TENSE

I like rice.	/mæn berenj dust dar-æm./	من برنج دوست دارَم.
You (*sg.*) like rice.	/to berenj dust dar-i./	تو برنج دوست داری.
He/She/It likes rice.	/u berenj dust dar-æd./	او برنج دوست دارد.
We like rice.	/ma berenj dust dar-im./	ما برنج دوست داریم.

You (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) like rice.	/šoma berenj dust dar-id./	شما برنج دوست دارید.
They (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) like rice.	/an-ha berenj dust dar-ænd./	آنها برنج دوست دارند.

THE VERB دوست داشتن (/dust dašt-æn/, to like) IN THE PAST TENSE

I liked rice.	/mæn berenj dust dašt-æm./	من برنج دوست داشتَم.
You (*sg.*) liked rice.	/to berenj dust dašt-i./	تو برنج دوست داشتی.
He/She/It liked rice.	/u berenj dust dašt./	او برنج دوست داشت.
We liked rice.	/ma berenj dust dašt-im./	ما برنج دوست داشتیم.
You (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) liked rice.	/šoma berenj dust dašt-id./	شما برنج دوست داشتید.
They (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) liked rice.	/an-ha berenj dust dašt-ænd./	آنها برنج دوست داشتَند.

To negate دوست داشتن, as with all other verbs, we only add the negative prefix نَـ (/næ-/) to the verb. For example, to say *I didn't like rice*, you say من برنج دوست نَداشتَم (/mæn berenj dust næ-dašt-æm/).

There are two other commonly used terms to express likes and dislikes, namely, از . . . خوش آمَدَن (/æz . . . xoš amæd-æn/, to like) and از . . . بَد آمَدَن (/æz . . . bæd amæd-æn/, to dislike, to hate). The best way to explain these terms is through examples:

من از برنج خوشَم می آید.
/mæn æz berenj xoš-æm mi-ay-æd./
I like rice.

او از ماست خوشِش می آید.
/u æz mast xoš-eš mi-ay-æd./
He/She/It likes yogurt.

ما از باقلا خوشِمان می آید.
/ma æz baqela xoš-eman mi-ay-æd./
We like broad beans.

As you can see, the expression از . . . خوش آمَدَن is used to express likes, just like دوست داشتَن. The difference is that we have to use the personal endings—ـَم، ـَت، ـَش، ـِمان، ـِتان، ـِشان—after the word خوش

(which means *nice* or *pleasant*).

In order to express dislikes, one can either negate از . . . خوش آمدن or use از . . . بَد آمَدَن, as in the following examples:

من از برنج بَدَم می آید.
/mæn æz berenj bæd-æm mi-ay-æd./
I hate rice.

او از ماست بَدِش می آید.
/u æz mast bæd-eš mi-ay-æd./
He/She/It hates yogurt.

ما از باقلا بَدِمان می آید.
/ma æz baqla bæd-eman mi-ay-æd./
We hate broad beans.

Double نَه . . . نَه (/næ . . . næ/) and هَم . . . هَم (/hæm . . . hæm/) Constructions

The double نَه . . . نَه (/næ . . . næ/) and هَم . . . هَم (/hæm . . . hæm/) constructions in Farsi are equivalent to *neither . . . nor* and *both . . . and* in English, respectively. For example, we heard Jim say in the dialogue that he liked both walnuts and broad beans; he said

من هَم باقلا دوست دارَم، هَم گِردو.
/mæn hæm baqela dust dar-æm, hæm gerdu./
I like both broad beans and walnuts.

We also heard him say that he wanted neither salad nor yogurt; he said

من نه سالاد می خوام، نه ماست.
/mæn næ salad mi-xam, næ mast./
I want neither salad nor yogurt.

As in English *neither . . . nor* construction, the verb used with a نه . . . نه construction is not negated. Look at the examples below:

فرشته هم ریاضی برداشت هم فیزیک.
/ferešte hæm riyazi bær dašt hæm fizik./
Fereshteh took both math and physics.

مانی و جیم هم به اصفهان رفتند هم به شیراز.
/mani væ jim hæm be esfæhan ræft-ænd, hæm be širaz./
Mani and Jim went to both Esfahan and Shiraz.

شما هم فارسی می خوانید هم می نویسید.
/šoma hæm farsi mi-xan-id hæm mi-nevis-id./
You both read and write Farsi.

جیم و شبنم نه کباب خوردند نه نان.
/jim væ šæbnæm næ kæbab xord-ænd næ nan./
Jim and Shabnam had neither kabob nor bread.

آنها نه کتاب خریدند نه غذا.
/an-ha næ ketab xær-id-ænd næ qæza./
They bought neither books nor food.

ما نه جیم را دیدیم نه مانی را.
/ma næ jim ra did-im næ mani ra./
We saw neither Jim nor Mani.

Using شایَد (/šayæd/, may, might)

The word شایَد (/šayæd/) is a modal auxiliary verb that means *maybe, perhaps, may,* or *might*. It is used before the verb, and when it is present, the verb comes in the subjunctive mood (see Lesson 8). This modal auxiliary isn't inflected for tense or person; only the main verb is. Look at these examples:

من شاید کباب بخورَم.
/mæn šayæd kæbab be-xor-æm./
I may eat kabob.

تو شاید کباب بخوری.
/to šayæd kæbab be-xor-i./
You (*sg.*) may eat kabob.

او شاید کباب بخورَد.
/u šayæd kæbab be-xor-æd./
He/She/It may eat kabob.

ما شاید کباب بخوریم.
/ma šayæd kæbab be-xor-im./
We may eat kabob.

شما شاید کباب بخورید.
/šoma šayæd kæbab be-xor-id./
You (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) may eat kabob.

آنها شاید کباب بخورَند.
/an-ha šayæd kæbab be-xor-ænd./
They may eat kabob.

9G. READING

The following passage is a simple recipe for cooking Persian-style rice.

چطور برنج بپَزیم

مَوادِ لازم:

برنج (دو فنجان، برای دو نَفَر)

روغَن (دو قاشُق غذاخوری)

نَمَک (دو قاشُقِ چایخوری)

قَبل از پُختَنِ برنج، اول آن را آب می کشیم.
بَعد آن را با آب در یک قابلمه ی مُتوَسِّط می گُذاریم. قابلمه را روی اجاق می گذاریم تا آب به جوش بیایَد. بَعد از چَند دقیقه دَر قابلمه را می گُذاریم. ده تا پانزده دقیقه ی بعد، برنج آماده است. نوشِ جان!

How to Cook Rice

Ingredients:

Rice (two cups, for two people)

Oil (two tablespoons)

Salt (two teaspoons)

Before cooking the rice, we first rinse it.

Then we put it in a medium pot with water. We put the pot on the stove until the water starts to boil. After a few minutes, we put the lid on. Ten to fifteen minutes later, the rice is ready. Bon appétit.

material, materials	/madde/, /mævadd/	مادّه، موادّ
necessary, required	/lazem/	لازم
cup	/fenjan/	فنجان
person	/næfær/	نَفَر
tablespoon (*lit.*, meal-eating spoon)	/qašoq-e qæza-xor-i/	قاشُقِ غَذاخوری
teaspoon (*lit.*, tea-drinking spoon)	/qašoq-e čay-xor-i/	قاشُقِ چایخوری
to rinse	/ab keš-id-æn/	آب کِشیدَن
cooking pot	/qablæme/	قابلَمه
medium	/motevæsset/	متِوَسّط
ready, prepared	/amade/	آماده

9H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Persian Food

Persian food is heavily rice-based. Most dishes consist of a rich sauce called خورش (xor-eš) served on a bed of steamed white long-grain rice. The خورش almost always contains red meat or chicken together with vegetables. Fesenjan (فسنجان), which was mentioned in the opening dialogue of this lesson, is very popular, especially among Westerners. There are also some dishes in which meat and vegetables are mixed directly into the rice, and therefore, no خورش is served with them. The most popular Persian side dishes are plain yogurt, bread, and fresh vegetables. The blend of fresh vegetables that Persians have alongside their food is called سبزی خوردَن (/sæbzi xord-æn/, *lit.*, eating vegetables) and consists of red and green basil, radish, green onions, leek, mint, tarragon, and sometimes pennyroyal. It tastes great and is very healthy.

Exercises

A. Change the last sentence using the cue words given. Start with this sentence:

شیرین از دِسِر خوشِش می آید .

۱. دوست دارد __________.

۲. شیرین و فرهاد __________.

۳. دوست ندارند __________.

٤. بدشان می آید __________.

٥. ما __________.

٦. خوشمان می آید __________.

۷. دوست داریم __________.

B. Turn these sentences in various tenses into subjunctive constructions with شاید.

۱. مانی دارد مرغ می خورد. __________.

۲. شما به مغازه رفتید. __________.

۳. پسرخاله ی من به اینجا آمد. __________.

٤. آنها در هتل اقامت کردند. __________.

٥. ما انگلیسی برداشتیم. __________.

C. Answer these questions with double هم . . . هم and نه . . . نه constructions.

۱. آیا شما سبزی دوست دارید یا میوه؟ (هم . . . هم) ________.
۲. آیا آنها به مدرسه می روند یا به کتابخانه؟ (نه . . . نه)________.
۳. آیا شبنم در شیراز زندگی می کند یا در اصفهان؟ (نه . . . نه)
________.
٤. آیا شما کتاب می خوانید یا روزنامه؟ (هم . . . هم) ________.
٥. آیا غذا در آشپزخانه است یا روی میز؟ (نه . . . نه) ________.

D. Fill in the blanks using the following words.

کُلاه   ساندویچ فروشی   گَرم   غَذایَم   ناهار

۱. شیرین برای ______ خورشِ فسنجان خورد.
۲. ما امروز در یک ______ غذا خوردیم.
۳. من با ______ ماست می خورَم.
٤. او شایَد برای زمستان یک ______ بخرَد.
٥. تابستانِ گذشته خیلی ______ بود.

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 2   B. 3   C. 1   D. 2   E. 3

Exercises

A.

۱. شیرین دسر دوست دارد.
۲. شیرین و فرهاد دسر دوست دارند.
۳. شیرین و فرهاد دسر دوست ندارند.
٤. شیرین و فرهاد از دسر بدشان می آید.
٥. ما از دسر بدمان می آید.
٦. ما از دسر خوشمان می آید.
۷. ما دسر دوست داریم.

B.

۱. مانی شاید مرغ بخورد.
۲. شما شاید به مغازه بروید.
۳. پسرخاله ی من شاید به اینجا بیاید.
٤. آنها شاید در هتل اقامت بکنند.
٥. ما شاید انگلیسی برداریم.

C.

۱. من هم سبزی دوست دارم هم میوه. or
ما هم سبزی دوست داریم هم میوه.
۲. آنها نه به مدرسه می روند نه به کتابخانه.
۳. شبنم نه در شیراز زندگی می کند نه در اصفهان.
٤. من هم کتاب می خوانم هم روزنامه or
ما هم کتاب می خوانیم هم روزنامه.
٥. غذا نه در آشپزخانه است نه روی میز.

D.

۱. ناهار ۲. ساندویچ فروشی ۳. غذایم ٤. کلاه
٥. گرم

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Visit www.aghaghi.com. Click on the سرگرمی tab. (سَرگَرمی /sær-gærm-i/ means *entertainment*.) Then click on the link entitled دستور آشپزی (/dæstur-e aš-pæz-i/, recipe). You will see a list of types of food. Click on خورش and then on خورش فسنجان. Print out the recipe for your language journal. Read through it and highlight the words that you know. See how much of the recipe you can follow. Also try printing out some of the the pizza recipes and see if you can follow those. Write down in your journal the meanings of any words you look up.

LESSON

10

Mani's Sick!

In this lesson you will learn the names of major body parts. You will also learn about visiting a doctor and expressing pains and some illnesses. The grammar points that we will cover in this lesson include the present perfect tense, using subjunctives after the verb خواستَن (/xast-æn/, to want), and asking questions with *how much* and *how many*.

10A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

body	/bædæn/, /tæn/	بـَدَن / تـَن
to go away (said of a problem), to get resolved	/bær tæræf šod-æn/	بـَر طـَرَف شـُدَن
fever	/tæb/	تـَب
medicine	/daru/	دارو
pain, ache	/dærd/	دَرد
to cough	/sorfe kærd-æn/	سُرفه کـَردَن
pill	/qors/	قـُرص
throat	/gælu/	گـَلو
to use, to take	/mæsræf kærd-æn/	مـَصرَف کـَردَن
What seems to be the problem? (*lit.*, What is your problem?)	/moškel-etan či-st?/, /moškel-etun či-ye?/	مشکلتان چیست؟ ، مُشکِلِتون چیه؟

10B. DIALOGUE

مانی: سلام، خانـُم دُکتـُر.

:/mani/ /sælam, xanom doktor./

دُکتُر: سلام، آقایِ پَیامی. مُشکِلِتون چیه؟

:/doktor/ /sælam, aqa-ye pæyami. moškel-etun či-ye?/

مانی: اِمروز از صُبح تَب و گَلو دَرد دارَم.

:/mani/ /emruz æz sobh tæb o gælu dærd dar-æm./

دُکتُر: سُرفه هَم می کنین (سرفه ... می کُنید)؟

:/doktor/ /sorfe hæm mi-kon-in (mi-kon-id)?/

مانی: خیلی کَم. وَلی تَن دَرد دارَم.

:/mani/ /xeyli kæm. væli tæn dærd dar-æm./

دُکتُر: دارویی مَصرَف کردید (مصرف کرده اید)؟*

:/doktor/ /daru-yi mæsræf kærd-id (kærd-e-'id)?/

مانی: فَقَط قُرصِ تَب بُر خوردم (خورده ام).*

:/mani/ /fæqæt qors-e tæb bor xord-æm (xord-e-æm)./

دُکتُر: چَند تا قُرص خوردید (خورده اید)؟*

:/doktor/ /čænd ta qors xord-id (xord-e-'id)?/

مانی: یکی. ساعَتِ نُه.

:/mani/ /yeki. sa'æt-e noh./

دُکتُر: چِقَدر تَب داشتین (داشتید)؟

:/doktor/ /čeqædr tæb dašt-in (dašt-id)?/

مانی: سی و هَشت و نیم دَرَجه.

:/mani/ /si o hæšt o nim dæræje./

دُکتُر: دهانتون رو باز کنین (باز کنید) لُطفاً. می خوام توی گَلوتون رو ببینَم.

:/doktor/ /dæhan-etun ro baz-konin (baz kon-id) lotfæn. mi-xa-m tu-ye gælu-tun ro be-bin-æm./

مانی: ااااا.

:/mani/ /aaaaaa./

دُکتُر: آرِه. گَلوتون یک کمی قِرمِزه. آبریزشِ بینی هَم دارین؟

:/doktor/ /are. gælu-tun yek kæmi qermez-e. ab-riz-eš-e bini hæm dar-in?/

مانی: دیشَب داشتَم، وَلی امروز بَر طَرَف شده.

:/mani/ /dišæb dašt-æm, væli emruz bær tæræf šod-e./

Jim:	Hello, Doctor (*lit.*, Madam Doctor).
Doctor:	Hello, Mr. Payami. What seems to be the problem? (*lit.*, What's your problem?)
Jim:	I've had a fever and sore throat today since morning.
Doctor:	Do you cough, too?
Jim:	Very little. But I have a body ache.
Doctor:	Have you taken any medicine?
Jim:	I've only taken fever medication. (*lit.*, I have only eaten fever-cutting pills.)
Doctor:	How many pills have you taken (*lit.*, eaten)?
Jim:	One. At nine o'clock.
Doctor:	How much fever did you have?
Jim:	Thirty-eight and a half degrees.
Doctor:	Open your mouth please. I want to look inside your throat.
Jim:	Ahhhhh.
Doctor:	Yeah. Your throat is a little red. Do you have a runny nose, too?
Jim:	I had last night. But today it's gone.

Grammar Note: Notice the difference between the spoken and the written form of the verbs مصرف کردن and خوردن. In spoken Farsi, except for the third person singular, there is no distinction between the pronunciation of the simple past form of a verb and the pronunciation of its present perfect form. It is for this reason that you hear the doctor say چند تا قرص خوردید when she wants to learn how many pills Mani has taken. You will learn about the written form of the present perfect tense in this lesson.

Usage Note 1: The verb خوردَن (/xord-æn/, to eat) is also used in the context of taking medication. For example, *to take pills* is قُرص خوردَن (/qors xord-æn/), and *to take medicine* is دارو خوردَن (/daru xord-æn/).

Usage Note 2: Iran uses the metric system. So when Mani says thirty-eight and a half degrees, he means thirty-eight and a half degrees Celsius, which is about 101 degrees Fahrenheit. Normal body temperature is 37 degrees Celsius.

Usage Note 3: The verb بَرطَرَف شُدَن (/bær tæræf šod-æn/, to get resolved) is used when we want to talk about something unpleasant going away or a problem being resolved. For example, when Mani wants to say that he doesn't have a runny nose anymore, he says بَرطَرَف شُدِه (/bær tæræf šod-e/, it's gone).

Usage Note 4: The question مشکلتون چیه؟, or its written variant, مشکلتان چیست؟ (/moškel-etan čist?/), literally means *What is your problem?* but it does not have the condescending tone that this question has in English. In the context of a doctor's visit and said with the right tone, it is equivalent to *What seems to be the problem?*

Comprehension Practice

Now answer the following questions based on the dialogue you just practiced.

A. What is Mani complaining about most?

۱. گلو درد و تب ۲. سرفه ۳. آبریزشِ بینی

B. What has he done about his fever?

۱. کاری نَکَرده. ۲. یِک قرصِ تب بُر خورده. ۳. خوابیده.

C. How does the doctor ask if Mani has a cough, too?

۱. آبِریزشِ بینی هم دارین؟ ۲. چند تا قرص خوردید (خورده اید)؟ ۳.سُرفه هَم می کنین؟

D. What does the doctor say after she looks inside Mani's throat?

۱. گلوتون کمی قرمزه. ۲. گلوتون خوبه. ۳. چقدر تب داشتین؟

E. When did Mani have a runny nose?

۱. امروز صبح ۲. دیشَب ۳. دیروز

10C. VOCABULARY

elbow	/aræenj/ or /arenj/	آرَنج
finger	/ængošt/	اَنگُشت
toe	/ængošt-e pa/	انگُشتِ پا
arm	/bazu/	بازو
buttocks	/basæn/	باسَن
nose	/bini/	بینی
foot	/pa/	پا
heel	/pašne-ye pa/	پاشنه ی پا
eye	/čæšm/, / češm/	چَشم
hand	/dæst/	دَست

tooth	/dændan/, /dændun/	دَندان، دَندون
mouth	/dæhan/, /dæhæn/	دَهان، دَهن
thigh	/ran-e pa/	رانِ پا
knee	/zanu/	زانو
tongue, language	/zæban/, /zæbun/	زَبان، زَبون
forearm	/sa'ed/	ساعِد
shin	/saq-e pa/	ساقِ پا
head	/sær/	سَر
chest, breast	/sine/	سینه
thumb	/šæst/	شَست
stomach, abdomen	/šekæm/	شِکَم
sole (of foot)	/kæf-e pa/	کَفِ پا
ear	/guš/	گوش
wrist, ankle	/moč-e dæst/, /moč-e pa/	مُچِ دَست، مچِ پا
hair	/mu/	مو
past, last	/piš/	پیش
happy	/xoš-hal/	خوشحال
flower shop	/gol foruš-i/	گُل فُروشی

10D. KEY PHRASES

You should take this pill three times a day.	/æz in qors ruz-i se bar bayæd mæsræf kon-id./	از این قُرص روزی سه بار بایَد مَصرَف کنید.
Where's the emergency room?	/uržans koja-st?/	اورژانس کُجاست؟
patient	/bimar/	بیمار
ill	/mæriz/	مَریض
hospital	/bimar-estan/	بیمارستان
nurse	/pæræstar/	پَرَستار
physician	/pezešk/	پِزِشک
ophthalmologist	/čæšm pezešk/	چَشم پِزشک

I feel nauseous.	/halæt-e tæhævvo' dar-æm./	حالَتِ تَهَوُّع دارَم.
I don't feel well.	/hal-æm xub n-ist./	حالَم خوب نیست.
My wife's foot hurts.	/xanom-æm pa dærd dar-e./	خانُمَم پا دَرد داره.
pharmacy	/daru-xane/	داروخانه
pharmacist	/daru-saz/	داروساز
to hurt	/dærd kærd-æn/	دَرد کَردَن
dentist	/dændan pezešk/	دندان پِزشک
I have a headache.	/sær dærd dar-æm./	سَر دَرد دارَم.
My head hurts.	/sær-æm dærd mi-kon-e./	سَرَم دَرد می کُنه.
common cold	/særma xord-egi/	سَرما خوردِگی
to burn	/suxt-æn/	سوختَن
My husband is sick.	/šohær-æm hal-eš bæd-e./	شوهَرَم حالِش بَدِه.
to sneeze	/ætse kærd-æn/	عَطسه کَردَن
Where does it hurt?	/koja-yetan dærd mi-kon-æd?/	کُجایِتان دَرد می کُنَد؟
(lower) backache	/kæmær dærd/	کَمَر دَرد
sore throat	/gælu dærd/	گَلو دَرد
doctor's office	/mætæbb-e doktor/	مَطَبِّ دُکتُر
to examine	/mo'ayene kærd-æn/	مُعایِنه کَردَن
I'd like to fill this prescription.	/mi-xah-æm in nosxe ra be-pič-æm./	می خواهَم اینِ نُسخه را بپیچَم.

10E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Visiting Sick Family Members or Friends

When somebody is sick, it is common practice for family and friends to go visit that person either in the hospital or at home. This is called عَیادَت کَردَن (/æyadæt kærd-æn/, to visit an ill person) or به عَیادَتِ کَسی رَفتَن (/be æyadæt-e kæsi ræft-æn/). People who go visit a sick person usually buy a bouquet of flowers or a box of sweets

for that person. It is also common to take a food item that is believed to be good for the patient. When greeting a sick person, people often say خُدا بَد نَده (/xoda bæd næde/), which literally means *May God not give you bad.* This is basically a way of saying *I'm sorry to hear about your illness.* If, on the other hand, the person who is being visited has given birth, it is common to congratulate the person by saying قَدَمِ نورَسیده مُبارَک (/qædæm-e no-ræs-id-e mobaræk/), which can roughly be translated as *May the newborn be blessed.*

10F. GRAMMAR

Present Perfect

The present perfect tense is used in English and Farsi to refer to an action or a situation that started at some point in the past and continues to the present or the effects of which are still relevant at the present time. For example, your friend asks you to go see a movie with her, but you saw that movie only last night and it's still quite fresh in your mind, so you say, *I've already seen that movie.* You say *have already seen* because the event occurred in the past and its effect (the fact that you still remember the movie vividly) still exists.

Farsi is almost exactly like English in this respect. Farsi speakers use the present perfect in the same situations as English speakers do—that is, when they want to talk about events that occurred in the past but the effects of which persist at the present time. They also form the present perfect similarly to the way English speakers do. The present perfect in Farsi is made with the past participle of the verb plus the normal subject endings. However, with the exception of the third person singular, there is no auxiliary verb. In the third person singular, the verb is followed by the auxiliary است (/æst/, is).

The past participle form of the verb is made with the past stem of the verb plus the suffix ـه (/-e/). Let's look at some examples of past participles:

SOME EXAMPLES OF THE PRESENT STEM, PAST STEM, AND PAST PARTICIPLE FORMS OF VERBS

PAST PARTICIPLE	PAST STEM	PRESENT STEM
(/ræft-e/, gone) رَفته	(/ræft/, went) رَفت	(/ro/, go) رو
(/goft-e/, said) گُفته	(/goft/, said) گُفت	(/gu/, say) گو
(/did-e/, seen) دیده	(/did/, saw) دید	(/bin/, see) بین
(/xord-e/, eaten) خورده	(/xord/, ate) خورد	(/xor/, eat) خور

Let's now look at some examples of present perfect sentences.

من آن کتاب را خوانده ام.
/mæn an ketab ra xand-e-æm./
I have read that book.

تو آن کتاب را خوانده ای.
/to an ketab ra xand-e-i./
You (*sg.*) have read that book.

او آن کتاب را خوانده است.
/u an ketab ra xand-e æst./
He/She has read that book.

ما آن کتاب را خوانده ایم.
/ma an ketab ra xand-e-im./
We have read that book.

شما آن کتاب را خوانده اید.
/šoma an ketab ra xand-e-id./
You (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) have read that book.

آنها آن کتاب را خوانده اند.
/an-ha an ketab ra xand-e-ænd./
They have read that book.

As you can see, we are using the same subject endings, ـَم /-æm/, ی /-i/, ـیم /-im/, ید /-id/, and ـَند /-ænd/, with the verb in the present perfect, except that in the case of the third person singular, we are also using the verb اَست (/æst/). The use of the verb است with the third person singular in the present perfect tense is obligatory only in written Farsi; in the spoken language it is hardly ever used. Therefore, in spoken language you will hear

او اون کتاب رو خونده.
/u un ketab ro xund-e./
He/She has read that book.

as opposed to

او آن کتاب را خوانده است.
/u an ketab ra xand-e æst./
He/She has read that book.

Here are some other examples of present perfect:

مَن یک قرص خورده ام.
/mæn yek qors xord-e-æm./
I have taken one pill.

او از موزه دیدَن کرده است.
/u æz muze did-æn kærd-e æst./
He has visited the museum.

شما این فیلم را دیده اید.
/šoma in film ra did-e-id./
You have seen this movie.

ما شام خورده ایم.
/ma šam xord-e-im./
We have had dinner.

Verbs after خواستَن (/xast-æn/, to want)

In English, the verb that appears after the verb *want* comes as an infinitive, e.g., *I want to go* or *She wants to see.* Farsi is a little different. In Farsi, the verb that appears after the verb خواستَن (/xast-æn/, to want) comes in the subjunctive form and is also inflected for person. For example, *I want to go* will be می خواهم بِرَوَم (/mi-xah-æm be-ræv-æm/), and *He wants to go* will be می خواهَد بِرود (/mi-xah-æd be-ræv-æd/). Let's see the phrase *want to go* conjugated for all persons.

CONJUGATION OF خواستَن (/xast-æn/, to want) WITH A SECOND VERB

I want to go	/mi-xah-æm be-ræv-æm/	می خواهَم بِرَوَم
you (*sg.*) want to go	/mi-xah-i be-ræv-i/	می خواهی بِرَوی
he/she/it wants to go	/mi-xah-æd be-ræv-æd/	می خواهَد بِرَوَد
we want to go	/mi-xah-im be-ræv-im/	می خواهیم بِرَویم
you (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) want to go	/mi-xah-id be -ræv-id/	می خواهید بِرَوید
they (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) want to go	/mi-xah-ænd be-ræv-ænd/	می خواهَند بِرَوَند

Here are some more examples:

آنها می خواهَند این کتاب را بِخَرَند.
/anha mi-xah-ænd in ketab ra be-xær-ænd./
They want to buy this book.

فَرهاد می خواهَد ریاضی بَردارَد.
/færhad mi-xah-æd riyazi bær dar-æd./
Farhad wants to take math.

ما می خواهیم دُکتُر را بِبینیم.
/ma mi-xah-im doktor ra be-bin-im./
We want to see the doctor.

شبنم و مانی می خواهند به شیراز بِرَوَند.
/šæbnæm væ mani mi-xah-ænd be širaz be-ræv-ænd./
Shabnam and Mani want to go to Shiraz.

آیا شما می خواهید الآن شام بخورید؟
/aya šoma mi-xah-id æl'an šam be-xor-id?/
Do you want to have dinner now?

If the sentence is in the past tense, the main verb (i.e., خواستن) appears in the past tense. The second verb remains in its subjunctive form. Here are the same examples as above, turned into past tense constructions.

آنها می خواستَند این کتاب را بخرند.
/anha mi-xast-ænd in ketab ra be-xær-ænd./
They wanted to buy this book.

فرهاد می خواست ریاضی بردارد.
/færhad mi-xast riyazi bær dar-æd./
Farhad wanted to take math.

ما می خواستیم دکتر را ببینیم.
/ma mi-xast-im doktor ra be-bin-im./
We wanted to see the doctor.

شبنم و مانی می خواستند به شیراز بروند.
/šæbnæm væ mani mi-xast-ænd be širaz be-ræv-ænd./
Shabnam and Mani wanted to go to Shiraz.

آیا شما می خواستید الآن شام بخورید؟
/aya šoma mi-xast-id æl'an šam be-xor-id?/
Did you want to have dinner now?

Questions with چِقَدر (/čeqædr/, how much) and چَند تا (/čænd ta/, how many)

چقدر and چند تا are used to inquire about the quantities of mass nouns and count nouns, respectively. That is, we use چقدر to ask about the quantity of a mass, as in *how much water, how much sand,* or *how much air,* and we use چند تا to ask about the quantity of things that can be counted, as in *how many books, how many cars,* or *how many pills.*

The difference between English and Farsi here is that in Farsi, nouns appear in their singular forms even when used with چند تا (/čænd ta/, how many), whereas in English, nouns come in their plural forms with *how many*. Let's look at some examples:

چند تا قـُرص خوردی؟
/čænd ta qors xord-i?/
How many pills did you take?

یک قـُرص خوردَم.
/yek qors xord-æm./
I took one pill.

چند تا بُشقاب می خواهید؟
/čænd ta bošqab mi-xah-id?/
How many plates do you (*pl.*) want?

سه تا بُشقاب می خواهیم.
/se ta bošqab mi-xah-im./
We want three plates.

مانی چند تا پیراهن خرید؟
/mani čand ta pirahæn xær-id?/
How many shirts did Mani buy?

مانی دو تا پیراهن خرید.
/mani do ta pirahæn xær-id./
Mani bought two shirts.

ما چقدر برنج داریم؟
/ma čeqædr berenj dar-im?/
How much rice do we have?

ما یک کیلو برنج داریم.
/ma yek kilu berenj dar-im./
We have a kilo of rice.

چقدر چای می خوری؟
/čeqædr čay mi-xor-i?/
How much tea do you have?

یک فِنجان چای می خورم.
/yek fenjan čay mi-xor-æm./
I have a cup of tea.

دَر بَهار چقدر باران داشتیم؟
/dær bæhar čeqædr baran dašt-im?/
How much rain did we have in the spring?

دَر بهار خیلی باران داشتیم.
/dær bæhar xeyli baran dašt-im./
We had a lot of rain in the spring.

In written or formal language, we only use چند, and not چند تا. Counting units other than تا are also used with چند. For example, you can say چَند نَفَر از دوستانمان (/čænd næfær æz dust-an-eman/, how many of our friends) and چَند عَدَد قاشُق (/čænd 'ædæd qašoq/, how many spoons).

10G. READING

Read the following excerpt from an information sheet about cold and flu.

هِنگامِ سَرماخورِدگی چه باید بکنیم؟

هِنگامِ سَرماخورِدگی باید دَر خانه استِراحَت بکُنیم و مایِعاتِ زیادی بِنوشیم. می توانیم آب، چای یا آبِ میوه بنوشیم. می توانیم بَرای برطرف شدنِ تب از قُرص های تب بُر استفاده بکنیم. ولی نباید زیاد قرص بخوریم. میوه و سبزیجاتِ تازه هَم برای سرماخوردگی خیلی خوب هستند. بَعد از دو یا سه روز حالمان خوب خواهد شد.

What should we do during a cold?

During a cold, we must rest at home and drink a lot of fluids. We can drink water, tea, or fruit juice. To relieve fever, we can use fever pills. But we must not take too many pills. Fresh fruits and vegetables are very good for colds, too. We will feel better after two or three days.

during, at the time	/hengam/	هِنگام
to rest	/esterahæt kærd-æn/	اِستِراحَت کَردَن
fluid, fluids	/maye'/, /maye'at/	مایِع، مایِعات
fruit juice	/ab-e mive/	آبِ میوه
fresh	/taze/	تازه

10H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Pharmacies in Iran

Pharmacies in Iran are run slightly differently from those in North America. First, there are no aisles where you can pick over-the-counter drugs. All drugs are kept behind the counter, and you need a prescription for most. The other difference is that drugs do not have trade names. They are all recognized by their generic names. So if you need a painkiller, you should ask for acetaminophen or ibuprofen, and not Tylenol™ or Advil™. Drugs are generally not too expensive in Iran unless they are imports. Sometimes, imported and rare drugs can only be purchased in a handful of government-run pharmacies. People who have medical and drug insurance through their employers do not pay for medical services or prescription drugs. Self-employed individuals can also insure themselves through the country's

Social Security Organization. You can learn more about Iran's healthcare system by visiting the website of the Food and Drug Department of the Ministry of Health and Medical Education at http://www.fdo.ir/.

Exercises

A. Turn these sentences into present perfect constructions.

۱. مانی یک لیوان برداشت. __________.
۲. شبنم دارد مسواک می زند. __________.
۳. ما در مغازه بودیم. __________.
٤. آنها به مکزیک مسافرت کردند. __________.
٥. من یک لباسِ نو می پوشَم. __________.
٦. آیا فرهاد پیش دانشگاهی می خوانَد؟ __________؟
۷. شما چند تا کتاب خریدید؟ __________؟

B. Answer these questions using the verb خواستَن (/xast-æn/), as in the example.

به اصفهان رفته ای؟
می خواهَم بِرَوَم.

۱. شبنَم آن لباس را خرید؟ __________.
۲. آیا شما در رستوران غذا خوردید؟ __________.
۳. آیا آنها دَر هُتِلِ اِقامَت می کُنَند؟ __________.
٤. امروز استراحت می کنی؟ __________.
٥. روزنامه ی امروز را خوانده ای؟ __________.

C. Use چند تا (/čænd/) or چقدر (/čeqædr/) to form questions based on the sentences given, as in the example.

یک لیوان آب می خواهم.
چقدر آب می خواهی؟

۱. دو کیلو قهوه خریدیم. __________؟
۲. یک پیشنَهاد به مانی کَردَم. __________؟
۳. به سه نَفَر از دوستانم تلفن خواهَم زَد. __________؟
٤. فَرهاد از یک گالِری دیدَن کرده است. __________؟
٥. در زمستان بَرفِ زیادی بارید. __________؟

to fall (said of rain or snow)	/bar-id-æn/	بارِیدَن
snow	/bærf/	بَرف

D. Fill in the blanks in the following text using the words provided.

است   پرستار   میوه   نَدیدَم   دیدَنِ   بیمارستان

عَیادَت   می خواستَم

هفته ی پیش، مَن به ___(۱)___ یکی از دوستانَم به ___(۲)___ رَفتَم. اسم دوستِ من پدرام ___(۳)___. من ___(٤)___ برای او گُل بِخَرَم، وَلی گُل فروشی ___(٥)___. به جایَش برای او ___(٦)___ خریدَم. او از ___(۷)___ مَن خیلی خوشحال شُد.

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 1   B. 2   C. 3   D. 1   E. 2

Exercises

A.

۱. مانی یک لیوان برداشته (است).
۲. شبنم مسواک زده (است).
۳. ما در مغازه بوده ایم.
٤. آنها به مکزیک مسافرت کرده اند.
٥. من یک لباسِ نو پوشیده ام.
٦. آیا فرهاد پیش دانشگاهی خوانده (است)؟
۷. شما چند کتاب خریده اید؟

B.

۱. شبنم می خواهد آن لباس را بخرد. or
شبنم آن لباس را می خواهد بخرد.
۲. ما می خواهیم در رستوران غذا بخوریم. or
ما در رستوران می خواهیم غذا بخوریم.
۳. آنها می خواهند در هتل اقامت بکنند. or
آنها در هتل می خواهند اقامت بکنند.
٤. امروز می خواهم استراحت بکنم. or
امروز استراحت می خواهم بکنم.
٥. می خواهم روزنامه ی امروز را بخوانم. or
روزنامه ی امروز را می خواهم بخوانم.

C.

۱. چقدر قهوه خریدید؟
۲. چند (تا) پیشنهاد به مانی کردی؟
۳. به چند نفر از دوستانت تلفن خواهی زَد؟
٤. فرهاد از چند (تا) گالری دیدن کرده است؟
٥. در زمستان چقدر برف بارید؟

D.

۱. عیادتِ ۲. بیمارستان ۳. است ٤. می خواستم
٥. ندیدم ٦. میوه ۷. دیدنِ

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Here are the beginning lines of a food safety and health note. The note has somewhat been simplified, but it still contains several words that have not been introduced yet. Read this passage and try to guess the meanings of the unknown words. Then, visit www.farsidic.com and double-check your guesses. Record the words in your language journal.

رعایت بهداشت مواد غذایی نقش مهمی در سلامت ما دارد. در حقیقت با تغذیه‌ی صحیح و سالم بسیاری از بیماری ها کنترل می شود.
توجه به این مطلب ساده امّا مفید می تواند برای سلامت ما اَرزَنده باشد.
دَستانِ خود را قَبل اَز تَهیّه ی غذا بِشویید.
دَستان خود را بَعد از دَستشویی رَفتَن حتماً بِشویید.
همه ی ظرف ها را به دِقّت بشویید و تَمیز بکُنید.
مُحیطِ آشپزخانه را از حُضور حَشَرات، وَ حیواناتِ دیگَر دور نگاه دارید.

[illegible]

ANSWER KEY

[illegible]

LESSON

11

Parliamentary Elections

This lesson covers the basic vocabulary about computers, mass media, and elections. The grammatical structures that we discuss in this lesson are conditional sentences, the past progressive tense, and embedded clauses in reporting constructions using the subordinating conjunction که (/ke/).

11A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

parliamentary elections	/entexabat-e mæjles/	اِنتِخاباتِ مَجلِس
economic plans	/bærname-ha-ye eqtesad-i/	بَرنامه هایِ اِقتِصادی
because	/čon/	چون
last night	/di-šæb/	دیشَب
to vote	/ræ'y dad-æn/	رَأی دادَن
that (*subordinating conjunction*)	/ke/	که
It's obvious.	/mæ'lum-e./	مَعلومه.
I don't know.	/mæn xæbær næ-dar-æm./	مَن خَبَر نَدارَم.
result	/nætije/	نَتیجه
to enter	/vared šod-æn/	وارد شُدَن

11B. DIALOGUE

Shabnam and Farhad are discussing the latest parliamentary elections.

شبنم: فرهاد، دیشَب اخبار رو نگاه کَردی؟

/šæbnæm/: /færhad, dišæb æxbar ro negah kærdi?/

فرهاد: نه، چِطور؟

/færhad/: /næ, če-tor?/

شبنم: مِی خواستم بِدونـَم (بدانم) که نَتیجه ی انتخاباتِ مَجلِس چی شُد.

/šæbnæm/: /mi-xast-æm be-dun-æm (be-dan-æm) ke nætij e-ye entexabat-e mæjles či šod./

فرهاد: مَن خَبَر نَدارَم، وَلی اَگه (اگر) حُسِینی واردِ مَجلِس بِشه (بشود)، خیلی خوب میشه.

/færhad/: /mæn xæbær næ-dar-æm, væli æge (ægær) hoseyni vared-e mæjles be-še (be-šæv-æd) xeyli xub mi-še./

شبنم: چِرا؟

/šæbnæm/: /čera?/

فرهاد: چون دیروز داشتَم توی اینترنِت می خوندَم (می‌خواندم) که حسینی برنامه های اِقتِصادیِ خوبی داره.

/færhad/: /čon diruz dašt-æm tu-ye internet mi-xund-æm (mi-xand-æm) ke hoseyni bærname-ha-ye eqtesad-i-ye xub-i dar-e./

شبنم: تو بِهِش رأی دادی؟

/šæbnæm/: /to be-heš ræ'y dad-i?/

فرهاد: مَعلومه.

/færhad/: /mæ'lum-e./

شبنم: پَس خوشحال می شی (می شوی) اگه بهت بگم (بگویم) که مَن هَم بِهِش رأی دادَم.

/šæbnæm/: /pæs xoš-hal mi-ši (mi-šæv-i) æge be-het be-gæm (be-gu-yæm) ke mæn hæm be-heš ræ'y dad-æm./

فرهاد: جِدّی می گی (می گویی)؟! چه خوب!

/færhad/: /jeddi mi-gi (mi-guy-i)?! če xub!/

Shabnam: Farhad, did you watch the news last night?

Farhad: No, why?

Shabnam: I wanted to know what the parliamentary election results were.

Farhad:	I don't know, but it will be really good if Hosseini gets into the parliament.
Shabnam:	Why?
Farhad:	Because I was reading on the internet yesterday that he had very good economic plans.
Shabnam:	Did you vote for him?
Farhad:	It's obvious.
Shabnam:	Then you'll be happy if I tell you that I voted for him, too.
Farhad:	Are you serious?! How nice!

Usage Note 1: The word چِطور (/če-tor/) literally means *how*, but in this context it means *Why do you ask?* A similar expression is چِطور مَگَر (/če-tor mægær/), or, in its spoken form, چِطور مَگه (/če-tor mæge/).

Usage Note 2: The expression مَن خَبَر نَدارَم (/mæn xæbær næ-dar-æm/) literally means *I have no news* (خبر is the singular form of اخبار, meaning *news*), and it can be used just like *I have no idea* or *I have no clue.*

Usage Note 3: The stems of the verbs شُدَن (/šod-æn/, to become) and گُفتَن (/goft-æn/, to say, to tell) get reduced to ش (/š/) and گ (/g/) in spoken language. That's why, instead of می شَوی (/mi-šæv-i/, you become) and بِگویَم (/be-gu-yæm/, I should tell), Shabnam says می شی (/mi-š-i/) and بِگَم (/be-g-æm/).

Comprehension Practice

Now answer these questions based on the dialogue you just practiced.

A. Why does Shabnam ask Farhad if he watched the news?

۱. چون می خواهَد بِدانَد که آیا فَردا بَرف خواهَد بارید.
۲. چون می خواهَد بِدانَد که آیا فَردا باران خواهَد بارید.
۳. چون می خواهَد بِدانَد که نتیجه ی انتخاباتِ مَجلِس چه شُد.

B. What does Farhad think about the election results?

۱. اگَر حُسینی واردِ مَجلِس بِشَوَد، خیلی خوب می شَوَد.
۲. اگَر حُسینی واردِ مَجلِس بِشَوَد، خیلی بَد می شَوَد.
۳. اگَر حُسینی واردِ مَجلِس بِشَوَد، مانی خوشحال می شَوَد.

C. What type of plans does Hosseini have?

۱. بَرنامه های هُنَری ِ خوب
۲. بَرنامه های اِقتِصادی ِ خوب
۳. بَرنامه های هُنَری و اِقتِصادی ِ خوب

D. How does Farhad know about Hosseini's good plans?

۱. در روزنامه خوانده است. ۲. در اخبار دیده است. ۳. در اینترنت خوانده است.

E. How does Farhad ask Shabnam if she is serious?

۱. معلومه؟ ۲. جِدّی می گی؟ ۳. چه خوب!

11C. VOCABULARY

internet	/internet/	اینترنِت
program, plan	/bærname/	بَرنامه
to ask	/pors-id-æn/	پُرسیدَن
post, mail	/post/	پُست
message	/pæyam/	پَیام
to watch	/tæmaša kærd-æn/	تَماشا کَردَن
republic	/jomhur-i/	جُمهوری
to speak	/hærf zæd-æn/	حَرف زَدَن
government	/dolæt/	دولَت
head, boss, chief	/ræ'is/	رَئیس
radio	/radiyo/	رادیو
leader	/ræh-bær/	رَهبَر
to count	/šemord-æn/	شِمُردَن
to hear	/šen-id-æn/	شِنیدَن
to talk	/sohbæt kærd-æn/	صُحبَت کَردَن
box, chest	/sænduq/	صَندوق
to send	/ferest-ad-æn/	فِرِستادَن
fax	/fæks/, /næma-bær/	فَکس، نَمابَر
candidate	/kandida/, /namzæd/	کاندیدا، نامزَد
who	/ke/ (/ki/), /če kæsi/	که (کی)، چه کَسی
to listen	/guš dad-æn/, /guš kærd-æn/	گوش دادَن/کَردَن
magazine (magazines)	/mæjælle/ (/majalle-ha, mæjallat/)	مَجَلّه (مَجَلّه‌ها، مَجَلات)
to review	/morur kærd-æn/	مُرور کَردَن
article, essay	/mæqale/	مَقاله

to look	/negah kærd-æn/	نـِگاه کـَردَن

11D. KEY PHRASES

to get elected, to get selected	/entexab šod-æn/	اِنتِخاب شـُدَن
to elect, to select	/entexab kærd-æn/	اِنتِخاب کـَردَن
presidential elections	/entexab-at-e riyasæt-e jomhuri/	انتخاباتِ ریاستَـِ جـُمهوری
to e-mail	/imeyl zæd-æn/	ایمـِیل زَدَن
e-mail	/imeyl/, /post-e elekteronik/	ایمـِیل، پـُستِ اِلکتِرونیک
to open	/baz kærd-æn/	باز کـَردَن
percent	/dær sæd/	دَر صـَد
president (of a country)	/ræ'is'e jomhur/	رَئیسِ جـُمهور
vote, ballot	/ræ'y/	رَأی
medium (media)	/ræsan-e/ (/ræsan-e-ha/)	رَسانه (رَسانه ها)
to take part, to participate	/šerkæt kærd-æn/	شـِرکـَت کـَردَن
city	/šæhr/	شـَهر
mayor	/šæhr-dar/	شـَهردار
ballot box	/sænduq-e ræ'y/	صـَندوقِ رَأی
computer	/kampiyuter/, /rayane/	کامپیوتِر، رایانه
government official (officials)	/mæqam-e dolæti/, (/mæqam-at-e dolæti/)	مَقامِ دولـَتی (مَقاماتِ دولـَتی)
official (*n.*), (officials)	/mæqam/, (/mæqam-at/)	مَقام (مَقامات)
website	/vebsayt/	وب سایت

11E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

The Iranian Government

Iran has had an Islamic theocratic government since the country's 1979 revolution. The head of state is وَلیّ فقیه (/valiyy-e fæqih/, Supreme Leader), who is appointed by مـَجلِسِ خبرگان (/majles-e xebre-gan/, As-

sembly of Experts). The members of مجلس خبرگان are elected through public ballot. The job of ولیّ فقیه is to coordinate the three main branches of the state—the executive, legislative, and judicial branches. The president, رَئیس جُمهور (/ræ'is-e jomhur/), is the head of the executive branch of the government and is elected by public vote. The legislative branch is the parliament (مَجلِس/mæjles/), whose members are elected by public vote. The head of the judiciary, however, is appointed by the Supreme Leader, who also appoints six members of another assembly, called شورای نِگَهبان (/šura-ye negæh-ban/, the Guardian Council). The job of the Guardian Council is to approve all of the bills passed by the parliament, as well as all of the candidates for public elections.

11F. GRAMMAR

Past Progressive

In lesson 4, we talked about the present progressive tense. We learned that the present progressive is typically used to refer to an action that is in progress at the present time, e.g., *I am reading this book now*. The past progressive tense is similar to the present progressive in the sense that it refers to an action in progress. The only difference is that the action was in progress at some point in the past, e.g., *I was reading a magazine yesterday afternoon.*

In Farsi, we learned that the present progressive is made with the present tense of the auxiliary verb داشتَن (/dašt-æn/) plus the present form of the main verb, as in the following example.

دارَم مجله می خوانم.
/dar-æm mæjalle mi-xan-æm./
I'm reading a magazine.

With this knowledge in mind, forming the past progressive is very easy. Instead of the present form of the verb داشتَن and the main verb, we use the past form, as in the example below.

داشتَم مجله می خواندَم.
/dašt-æm mæjalle mi-xand-æm./
I was reading a magazine.

The following is the verb خواندَن (/xan-d-æn/) conjugated for past progressive.

THE VERB خواندَن (/xan-d-æn/, to read) IN THE PAST PROGRESSIVE TENSE

I was reading	/dašt-æm mi-xand-æm/	داشتَم می خواندَم
you (*sg.*) were reading	/dašt-i mi-xand-i/	داشتی می خواندی

he/she was reading	/dašt mi-xand/	داشت می خواند
we were reading	/dašt-im mi-xand-im/	داشتیم می خواندیم
you (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) were reading	/dašt-id mi-xand-id/	داشتید می خواندید
they (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) were reading	/dašt-ænd mi-xand-ænd/	داشتَند می خواندَند

Note: As with the present progressive, the past progressive is most commonly used in spoken language and not in written language.

Here are some more examples:

فرهاد داشت با شبنم صُحبَت می کَرد.
/færhad dašt ba šæbnæm sohbæt mi-kærd./
Farhad was talking with Shabnam.

فَرهاد و شَبنَم داشتَند حَرف می زَدَند.
/færhad o šæbnæm dašt-ænd hærf mi-zæd-ænd./
Farhad and Shabnam were speaking.

ما داشتیم یک مَقاله می نِوِشتیم.
/ma dašt-im yek mæqale mi-nevešt-im./
We were writing an article.

آنها داشتَند رأی می دادَند.
/anha dašt-ænd ræ'y mi-dad-ænd./
They were voting (casting their votes).

داشتَم به مانی فَکس می فِرستادَم.
/dašt-æm be mani fæks mi-ferest-ad-æm./
I was sending a fax to Mani.

Conditional Sentences

Conditional sentences are those sentences that contain a clause that starts with *if* or *unless*. We call this clause the *if*-clause. Conditional sentences come in a variety of types depending on their meaning and the tenses of their clauses. The most basic type of conditional sentence is the kind that talks about a possible situation in the present or at a future time, as in, *It'll be very good if he gets into the parliament.*

In Farsi, conditional sentences of this type have their *if*-clauses in the subjunctive mood and their main clauses in the simple present tense. Look at this example:

اگَر واردِ مَجلِس بِشَوَد، خیلی خوب می شَوَد.
/ægær vared-e mæjels be-šæv-æd, xeyli xub mi-šæv-æd./
If he gets into the parliament, it'll be very good.

The following is another example, conjugated for all persons.

اگر به مدرسه بِرَوَم، او را می بینَم.
/ægær be mædrese be-ræv-æm, u ra mi-bin-æm./
If I go to school, I'll see him/her.

اگر به مدرسه بِرَوی، او را می بینی.
/ægær be mædrese be-ræv-i, u ra mi-bin-i./
If you (*sg.*) go to school, you'll see him/her.

اگر به مدرسه بِرَوَد، او را می بینَد.
/ægær be mædrese be-ræv-æd, u ra mi-bin-æd./
If he/she goes to school, he/she will see him/her.

اگر به مدرسه بِرَویم، او را می بینیم.
/ægær be mædrese be-ræv-im, u ra mi-bin-im./
If we go to school, we'll see him/her.

اگر به مدرسه بِرَوید، او را می بینید.
/ægær be mædrese be-ræv-id, u ra mi-bin-id./
If you (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) go to school, you'll see him/her.

اگر به مدرسه بِرَوَند، او را می بینَند.
/ægær be mædrese be-ræv-ænd, u ra mi-bin-ænd./
If they go to school, they'll see him/her.

Usage Note: It is common for the *if*-clause to appear first in Farsi. In a more formal style, the *if*-clause can also come last. Example:

او را می بینم اگر به مدرسه بروم.
/u ra mi-bin-æm ægær be mædrese be-ræv-æm./
I'll see him/her if I go to school.

Here are some more examples of conditional sentences.

اگر مانی تلفن بِزَنَد، پیام شما را به او می دهم.
/ægær mani telefon be-zæn-æd, pæyam-e šoma ra be u mi-dæh-æm./
If Mani calls, I will give him your message.

اگر شبنم این خبر را بِشنَوَد، خوشحال می شَوَد.
/ægær šæbnæm in xæbær ra be-šenæv-æd, xoš-hal mi-šæv-æd./
If Shabnam hears this (news), she'll get happy.

اگر این قرص را بخوری، عطسه ات بر طرف می شود.
/ægær in qors ra be-xor-i, ætse-æt bær tæræf mi-šæv-æd./
If you take this pill, your sneeze will go away.

اگر به مسافرت برویم، خوب می شَوَد.
/ægær be mosaferæt be-ræv-im, xub mi-šæv-æd./
If we take a trip, it will be good.

Embedded Clauses with که (/ke/, that)

In the opening dialogue of this lesson, Shabnam tells Farhad that she wanted to know what the election results were. She says,

می خواستَم بدانَم که نتیجه ی انتخاباتِ مَجلِس چه شُد.
/mi-xast-æm be-dan-æm ke nætije-ye entexabat-e mæjles če šod./
I wanted to know what the results of the parliamentary elections were.

In Farsi when we need to place a clause inside a larger clause as we report someone's speech, we can use the subordinating conjunction که (/ke/) to connect the subordinated clause to the main clause. Here are some examples:

به مانی بگو که مَن تلفن زَدَم.
/be mani be-gu ke mæn telefon zæd-æm./
Tell Mani that I phoned.

فِکر می کنم که شبنم به حسینی رأی داده.
/fekr mi-kon-æm ke šæbnæm be hoseyni ræ'y dad-e./
I think that Shabnam has voted for Hosseini.

اخبار گفت که فردا باران می آید.
/æxbar goft ke færda baran mi-a-yæd./
The news said that it is raining tomorrow.

آنها گفتند که ساعتِ هشت اینجا هستند.
/anha goft-ænd ke sa'æt-e hæšt inja hæst-ænd./
They said that they'd be here at 8:00. (*lit.*, They said that they are here at 8:00.)

As in English, using the subordinating conjunction in the above context is optional.

11G. READING

Read the following newspaper report about parliamentary elections.

هَفته ی گُذشته، مردمِ زیادی دَر انتخاباتِ مجلِس شِرکَت کَردَند. مقاماتِ دولتی صندوق های رأی را در روزِ دوشنبه باز کردند. بَعد از شُمارشِ رأی ها، معلوم شُد که هفتاد درصَدِ مردم رأی داده اند. مقامات می گویند که حسینی رأی های بسیاری دارَد و شاید واردِ مَجلِس بِشَوَد. مردُم و رَسانه ها هَمه می گویَند که آقایِ حسینی برنامه های اقتصادیِ خوبی دارند.

Last week many people participated in the parliamentary elections. Government officials opened the ballot boxes on Monday. After counting the votes, it was clear that seventy percent of the people had voted. Officials say that Hosseini has a lot of votes and that he may enter the parliament. People and the media all say that Mr. Hosseini has very good economic plans.

11H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Voting in Iran

Any Iranian citizen, male or female, over the age of fifteen can vote in Iran. In order to vote, voters need to take their birth certificate to a ballot station near their residence and cast their vote in a ballot box. Iranian birth certificates are little booklets with multiple pages, a couple of pages of which are reserved for election stamps. When people vote, they get a stamp in their birth certificate to record that they have voted. The Iranian parliament and the president are elected every four years. The president can hold office for up to two terms. Elections at the municipal level are also held in Iran.

Exercises

A. Complete the sentences below using the past progressive form of the verb in parentheses.

۱. حسینی در تلویزیون (صُحبَت کَردَن) ________.
۲. رئیس جمهور از اصفهان (دیدن کَردَن) ________.
۳. مَن یک مَقاله (نوشتَن) ________.
٤. مانی چَند ایمیل (خواندن) ________.
٥. ما ناهار (خوردن) ________.

B. Complete the following sentences using the correct forms of the verbs in parentheses. Remember that in conditional sentences referring to possible situations in the present or at a future time, the verb in the *if*-clause is in the subjunctive mood, and the verb in the *then*-clause is in the present tense.

۱. اگر من مانی را (دیدن) ________، به او (گفتن) ________.
۲. اگر او به مجلس (رفتن) ________، مانی خوشحال (شدن) ________.
۳. اگر تو اخبار را (گوش کردن) ________، نتیجه را (شنیدن) ________.
٤. اگر شما زیرِ باران (ماندن) ________، مریض (شدن) ________.
٥. اگر آنها به من (گفتن) ________، یک شیرینی (گرفتن) ________.

C. Turn these sentences into reported speech constructions with که (/ke/), as in the example.

شبنم گفت: «من می خواهم به رادیو گوش بدهم.»
شبنم گفت که می خواهد به رادیو گوش بدهد.

۱. مانی پرسید: «چطور از اینجا به موزه بروم؟» __________
۲. شیرین گفت: «من فردا به اصفهان می روم.» __________
۳. آن مرد پرسید: «اتوبوس کِی می آیَد؟» __________
٤. فرهاد از ما پرسید: «این نامه را به کُجا می فرستید؟» __________
٥. همسَر جیم گفت: «فردا تلفن خواهم کرد.» __________

D. Match the sentences in the first column with those in the second column to form a dialogue. You will need to rearrange the lines in both columns.

۱. تو به کی رأی دادی؟	الف. مَن به آرام رأی دادَم.
۲. مانی، تو دیشب رادیو رو گوش کردی؟	ب. فَردا معلوم می شه.
۳. کِی مَعلوم می شه؟	پ. دیشب اخبار نَگُفت.
٤. می خواستَم بدونم که نتیجه ی انتخاباتِ ریاستِ جُمهوری چی شُد.	ت. آره، چطور؟

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 3 B. 1 C. 2 D. 3 E. 2

Exercises

A.

۱. داشت صُحبَت می کَرد ۲. داشت دیدَن می کَرد
۳. داشتَم می نوشتَم ٤. داشت می خواند
٥. داشتیم می خوردیم

B.

۱. ببینم ... می گویم ۲. بِرَوَد ... می شَوَد
۳. گوش بِدَهی ... می شِنَوی ٤. بمانید ... می شَوید
٥. بگویَند ... می گیرَند

C.

۱. مانی پرسید که چطور از اینجا به موزه برود.

۲. شیرین گفت که فردا به اصفهان می رود.
۳. آن مرد پرسید که اتوبوس کِی می آید.
٤. فرهاد از ما پرسید که این نامه را به کجا می فرستیم.
٥. همسرِ جیم گفت که فردا تلفن خواهد کرد.

D.

۲. مانی، تو دیشب رادیو رو گوش کردی؟	ت. آره، چطور؟
٤. می خواستَم بدونم که نتیجه ی انتخاباتِ ریاستَ جُمهوری چی شُد.	پ. دیشب اخبار نَگُفت.
۳. کِی مَعلوم می شه؟	ب. فَردا معلوم می شه.
۱. تو به کی رأی دادی؟	الف. مَن به آرام رأی دادَم.

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

In your language journal, write about the last time you or someone you know voted. Try to use as many of the words you learned in this lesson as possible.

LESSON 12

Mailing a Package

In this lesson, you will learn some common terms used at post offices and banks. You will also learn to use the polite past construction, as well as the passive and middle voices. But first, let's practice a few new words.

12A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

to let, to allow	/ejaze dad-æn/	اجازه دادَن
extra, addition	/ezafe/	اِضافه
express	/eksperes/	اِکسپرِس
package	/bæst-e/	بَسته
insurance	/bime/	بیمه
local, domestic	/daxeli/	داخِلی
to last, to take (time)	/tul keš-id-æn/	طول کِشیدَن
employee, clerk	/kar-mænd/	کارمَند
gram (0.0353 ounces)	/geræm/	گِرَم
weight	/væzn/	وَزن

12B. DIALOGUE

کارمَندِ پُست: نفرِ بَعد. بفرمایین.

:/kar-mænd-e post/ /næfær-e bæ'd. be-færma-yin./

شبنم: سَلام، آقا. می خواستَم این بَسته رو بِفِرستَم به شیراز.

:/šæbnæm/ /sælam, aqa. mi-xast-æm in bæste ro be-ferest-æm be širaz./

کارمَندِ پُست: بسیار خوب. وَزنِش کردین (وزنش کَردید)؟

/kar-mænd-e post/: /besiyar xob. væzn-eš kærd-in (væzn-eš kærd-id)?/

شبنم: نـه، وَزن نـَشـُده.

/šæbnæm/: /næ, væzn næ-šod-e./

کارمَندِ پُست: یک کیلو و دویست گِرَمه. اِکسپِرس فِرستاده می شه؟

/kar-mænd-e post/: /yek kilu o devist geræm-e. eksperes ferest-ad-e mi-š-e?/

شبنم: بله، اگه مُمکِنه. هزینه ی اکسپرس چقدره؟

/šæbnæm/: /bæle, æge momken-e. hæzine-ye eksperes če-qædr-e?/

کارمَندِ پُست: میشه دویست و ده تومان. اگه بیمه هَم بخواهین (بخواهید)، پَنجاه تومان اضافه می شه.

/kar-mænd-e post/: /mi-š-e devist o dæh tuman. æge bime hæm be-xah-in (be-xah-id), pænjah tuman ezafe mi-š-e./

شبنم: نه، بیمه لازم نیست. چِقَدر طول می کِشه (طول می کشد) که بَسته به شیراز بِرسه (برسد)؟

/šæbnæm/: /næ, bime lazem nist. če-qædr tul mi-keš-e (mi-keš-æd) ke bæste be širaz be-res-e (be-res-æd)?/

کارمَندِ پُست: اکسپرسِ داخِلی دو تا سه روز طول می کِشه.

/kar-mænd-e post/: /eksperes-e daxel-i do ta se ruz tul mi-keš-e./

شبنم: خوبه. اکسپرس می فرستَمِش.

/šæbnæm/: /xub-e. eksperes mi-ferest-æm-eš./

کارمَندِ پُست: بسیارخوب. دویست و دهَ تومان می شه.

/kar-mænd-e post/: /besiyar xob. devist o dæh tuman mi-še./

شبنم: بفرمایین. این هم سیصَد تومان.

/šæbnæm/: /be-færma-yin. in hæm si-sæd tuman./

کارمَندِ پُست: نـَوَد تومان بـَقیه ی پولتون.

/kar-mænd-e post/: /nævæd tuman bæqiye-ye pul-etun./

شبنم: خیلی مَمنون. خـُداحافِظ.

/šæbnæm/: /xeyli mæmnun. xoda-hafez./

کارمَندِ پُست: خُداحافِظ.
:/kar-mænd-e post/ /xoda-hafez./

Postal employee: The next person. How can I help you?

Shabnam: Hello, sir. I'd like to send this package to Shiraz.

Postal employee: Very well. Have you weighed it?

Shabnam: No, it hasn't been weighed.

Postal employee: It's a kilo and two hundred grams. Is it to be sent express?

Shabnam: Yes, if possible. What's the cost of express (post)?

Postal employee: It's two hundred and ten tumans. If you want insurance too, it'll be fifty tumans extra.

Shabnam: No, insurance isn't necessary. How long will it take for the package to get to Shiraz?

Postal employee: Local express takes two to three days.

Shabnam: Good. I'll send it express.

Postal employee: Very well. It'll be two hundred and ten tumans.

Shabnam: There you go. Here's three hundred tumans.

Postal employee: Ninety tumans is your change.

Shabnam: Thank you very much. Good-bye.

Postal employee: Good-bye.

Comprehension Practice

Now answer these questions based on the dialogue you just practiced.

A. How does the postal employee call on the next person in line?

۱. بسیار خوب ۲. نَفَر بَعد ۳. سَلام

B. What is Shabnam sending to Shiraz?

۱. یک کِتاب ۲. پول ۳. یِک بَسته

C. How much does the package weigh?

۱. یک کیلو و دویست گِرَم ۲. دویست و دَه گِرَم ۳. پَنجاه گِرَم

D. How much does insurance on the package cost?

۱. پَنجاه تومان ۲. دویست ریال ۳. دویست و پَنجاه تومان

E. How long does it take for a package to get to Shiraz by express mail?

۱. یک تا دو هَفته　　۲. دو تا سه روز　　۳. یک تا دو ساعت

12C. VOCABULARY

water	/ab/	آب
address	/adres/, /nešan-i/	آدرس، نِشانی
province	/ostan/	اُستان
bank	/bank/	بانک
electricity	/bærq/	بَرق
envelope	/pakæt-e name/	پاکَتِ نامه
stamp	/tæmbr/	تَمبر
check	/ček/	چِک
account	/hesab/	حِساب
savings account	/hesab-e pæs-ændaz/	حِسابِ پَس انداز
checking account	/hesab-e jari/	حِسابِ جاری
foreign, international	/xarej-i/	خارِجی
checkbook	/dæste ček/	دَسته چِک
village	/rusta/	روستا
ground, earth, land	/zæmin/	زَمین
surface (*adj.*, as in *surface mail*)	/zæmin-i/	زَمینی
line, queue	/sæf/	صَف
mailbox	/sænduq-e post/	صَندوقِ پُست
P. O. box	/sænduq-e post-i/	صَندوقِ پُستی
sender	/ferest-ænde/	فِرستَنده
postal code	/kod-e post-i/	کُدِ پُستی
country	/kešvær/	کِشوَر
receiver	/gir-ænde/	گیرَنده
letter	/name/	نامه
air (*adj.*, as in *airmail*)	/hæva-yi/	هَوایی

12D. KEY PHRASES

banknote	/eskenas/	اِسکِناس
international	/beyn-ol-melæl-i/	بین المِلَلی
post office	/post-xane/	پُست خانه
surface mail	/post-e zæmin-i/	پُستِ زَمینی
airmail	/post-e hæva-yi/	پُستِ هوایی
to open an account	/hesab baz kærd-æn/	حِساب باز کَردَن
to open a savings account	/hesab-e pæs ændaz baz kard-æn/	حِسابِ پَس انداز باز کَردَن
to open a checking account	/hesab-e jari baz kærd-æn/	حِسابِ جاری باز کَردَن
to stand in line	/dær sæf istad-æn/	در صَف ایستادن
coin	/sekke/	سِکّه
water bill	/qæbz-e ab/	قَبضِ آب
electricity bill	/qæbz-e bærq/	قَبضِ بَرق
telephone bill	/qæbz-e telefon/	قَبضِ تِلِفُن
gas bill	/qæbz-e gaz/	قَبضِ گاز
bill	/qæbz/, /suræt hesab/	قَبض، صورَت حِساب
bank teller	/kar-mænd-e bank/	کارمَندِ بانک
coins or small bills (*lit.*, small money)	/pul-e xord/	پولِ خُرد
large bills (*lit.*, large money)	/pul-e dorošt/	پولِ دُرُشت
price	/qeymæt/	قیمَت
What's the price of this?	/qeymæt-e in čeqædr-e?/	قیمَتِ این چِقَدره؟

12E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Iranian Coins and Banknotes

Currently, the smallest Iranian coin is the five-rial coin. Coins with larger denominations are 10, 50, 100, and 250 rials. Banknotes start at 100 rials (10 tumans) and go up in these denominations: 200, 500, 1,000, 2,000, 5,000, 10,000, and 20,000 rials. You can see these coins and

banknotes at http://www.iranchamber.com/geography/iranian_currency/iranian_currency.php. You can also see some Iranian stamps on the Iranian Post Company website at http://www.post.ir/.

12F. GRAMMAR

Polite Past

In English, speakers sometimes use the past tense as a form of social distancing or politeness, as in *Did you have a question?* as opposed to *Do you have a question?* or *I wanted to ask you something* as opposed to *I want to ask you something*. The past tense in these examples does not refer to past events; rather, it has an extralinguistic function. It helps the speaker to not sound too forward or blunt.

The same thing happens in Farsi as well. Speakers often use the past tense for politeness or social distancing. For example, Shabnam in the opening dialogue of this lesson tells the postal employee,

می خواستم این بسته رو بفرستم به شیراز.
/mi-xast-æm in bæste ro be-ferest-æm be širaz./
I'd like (*Lit.*, I wanted) to send this package to Shiraz.

This sentence is in the past tense, but it refers to the present time. She wants to send the package now, not yesterday. We call this use of the past tense the *polite past*.

Here are some more examples of using the polite past.

می خواستَم یک حِسابِ جاری باز کُنَم.
/mi-xast-æm yek hesab-e jari baz kon-æn./
I'd like (*Lit.*, I wanted) to open a checking account.

Usage Note: With some common verbs like کَردَن (/kærd-æn/), we can make a subjunctive form without adding the prefix بِ (/be-/). This is especially true in spoken language. For example, here we have کُنَم (/kon-æm/) instead of بِکُنَم (/be-kon-æm/). Of course, saying بکنم is not wrong.

یک سؤال داشتَم.
/yek so'al dašt-æm./
I had a question.

Spelling Note: The letter ؤ is used for the /'/ sound after an /o/ vowel, as in سُؤال (/so'al/, question) in the above example.

می خواستَم این نامه را به اصفهان بفرستَم.
/mi-xast-æm in name ra be esfahan be-ferest-æm./
I'd like (*Lit.*, I wanted) to send this letter to Esfahan.

Usage Note: Recall that order of phrases is fairly free in Farsi, so می خواستم این نامه را به اصفهان بفرستم and می خواستم این نامه را بفرستم به اصفهان are identical. Just remember

that ending the sentence with a verb (as in the second example) is formal and more common in written language.

The use of the polite past isn't limited to first person singular. You can use it with all persons and numbers.

ما چند سؤال داشتیم.
/ma čænd so'al dašt-im./
We had a few questions.

شُما می خواستید مَن را ببینید؟
/šoma mi-xast-id mæn ra be-bin-id?/
Did you want to see me?

پِدَرَم چَند تا بَسته می خواست پُست کُند.
/pedær-æm čænd ta bæste mi-xast post kon-æd./
My father wanted to mail a few packages.

NOTE: Remember that we can make new verbs from many nouns by adding light verbs like کردن، زَدَن، خوردَن، شُدَن to the nouns (lesson 1). The verb پُست کَردَن (/post kærd-æn/) then means *to mail.*

Passive Voice (Present Tense)

Voice is a grammatical term that refers to the relationship between the action or the state expressed by the verb and its arguments (subject, object, etc.). All of the sentences that we have used in this book up to this point have been in the active voice, which means the syntactic subjects of these sentences (the noun phrases beginning the sentences) have also been the logical subjects of those sentences (the person or thing that performed or caused the action) and that the syntactic objects of the sentences have also been the logical objects (the person or thing upon which the action took place). For example, *John saw Mary* is in the active voice because *John* (the syntactic subject of the sentence) is also the logical subject (it is the person that does the seeing) and *Mary* (the syntactic object of the sentence) is also the logical object (the person being seen).

There are, however, sentences in most languages, including English and Farsi, in which the syntactic subject of the sentence is the logical object, as in *Mary was seen by John.* In such sentences the logical subject is either missing or mentioned in a prepositional phrase with *by,* as in our example (e.g., *by John*). Such sentences are in the passive voice. If you look at English passive sentences a little more carefully, you will notice that in all of them there is a form of the auxiliary verb *to be* followed by the past participle of a transitive verb, as in *was seen, is written, will be eaten,* etc. A transitive verb is a verb that requires the presence of an object.

The passive voice in Farsi is similar. We make passive sentences in Farsi by using the past participial form of a transitive verb followed by the verb شُدَن inflected for tense, person, and number.

The past participial form of verbs is made with the past stem of the verb followed by the suffix ـه (/-e/). For example, the past participle of the verb دیدَن (/did-æn/, to see) is دیده (/did-e/, seen). We talked about the past participial form of verbs in lesson 10. Here is the verb دیدَن conjugated in the present tense passive voice for all persons.

THE VERB دیدَن (/did–æn/, to see) IN THE PRESENT HABITUAL TENSE, PASSIVE VOICE

I am seen	**/did-e mi-šæv-æm/**	دیده می شـوَم
you (*sg.*) are seen	**/did-e mi-šæv-i/**	دیده می شـَوی
he/she/it is seen	**/did-e mi-šæv-æd/**	دیده می شـوَد
we are seen	**/did-e mi-šæv-im/**	دیده می شـَویم
you (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) are seen	**/did-e mi-šæv-id/**	دیده می شـَوید
they (*pl.* or *sg. fml.*) are seen	**/did-e mi-šæv-ænd/**	دیده می شـوَند

Passive voice is used for a variety of reasons, the most important of which are (i) that the logical subject of the sentence is unknown (e.g., *The bag was stolen,* when we don't know who stole the bag) or (ii) that the logical subject of the sentence is not relevant to the message or is obvious (e.g., *The book will be published in April,* when what we care about most is the book itself and not the publisher). There are times that we do mention the logical subject but only in a *by*-phrase (e.g., *The roads are taken care of by the city*). The preposition that is used in Farsi in the place of *by* in passive sentences is تـَوَسـُّطِ (/tævæssot-e/). Here are some examples of passive sentences with *by*-phrases.

نامه ها تـَوَسـُّطِ شبنم فرستاده می شـوَند.
/name-ha tævæssot-e šæbnæm ferest-ad-e mi-šæv-ænd./
The letters are sent by Shabnam.

پول تـَوَسـُّطِ کارمَندِ بانک پَرداخت می شـوَد.
/pul tævæssot-e kar-mænd-e bank pærdaxt mi-šæv-æd./
Money is paid by the bank teller.

رأی ها تـَوَسـُّطِ مـَقامات شـِمـُرده می شـوَند.
/ræ'y-ha tævæssot-e mæqam-at šemord-e mi-šæv-ænd./
The votes are counted by the officials.

قانون تـَوَسـُّطِ مـَجلِس نـِوشته می شـوَد.
/qanun tævæssot-e mæjles nevešt-e mi-šæv-æd./
Law is written by the parliament.

Middle Voice

Middle voice is form between active and passive voice in function. In active voice, the syntactic subject is the logical subject as well, and the verb is in its active form. In passive voice, the syntactic subject is the logical object, and the verb is in the passive form (i.e., past participle plus شدن). In middle voice, the verb looks like an active verb (no past participle), but the syntactic subject of the sentence is the logical object. Here are some sentences in the active voice together with their middle voice versions.

MIDDLE VOICE	ACTIVE VOICE
بَسته وَزن شُد. /bæste væzn šod./ The package got weighed.	شبنم بَسته را وَزن کَرد. /šæbnæm bæste ra væzn kærd./ Shabnam weighed the package.
صَندوق ها باز شُدَند. /sænduq-ha baz šod-ænd./ The boxes got open.	مَقامات صَندوق ها را باز کَردَند. /mæqam-at sænduq-ha ra baz kærd-ænd./ Officials opened the boxes.
میز رَنگ شُد. /miz ræng šod./ The table got painted.	مانی میز را رَنگ کَرد. /mani miz ra ræng kærd./ Mani painted the table.
نامه ها پست می شوند. /name-ha post mi-šæv-ænd./ The letters get mailed.	ما نامه ها را پست می کنیم. /ma name-ha ra post mi-kon-im./ We mail the letters.
انتخابات شُروع می شود. /entexab-at šoru' mi-šæv-æd./ The elections begin.	مقامات انتخابات را شُروع می کُنند. /mæqam-at entexab-at ra šoru' mi-kon-ænd./ The officials begin the elections.

Notice that in all of the above examples, the verb is a phrasal one. A phrasal verb is a multi-word verb. For example, in English verbs like *look out, call up, go on,* and *lock up* are considered phrasal verbs because they are made up of a verbal element, namely, *look, call, go,* and *lock,* and another word. Farsi phrasal verbs are typically made with an adjective or noun and the verb کَردَن in the active voice or the verb شُدَن in the middle voice. But, as mentioned before, there is no past participle as there is in the case of the passive voice. Middle voice is very common in Farsi, even more common than the passive.

12G. READING

The following is a simplified excerpt from a bank brochure about opening an account.

باز کردَن ِ یک حسابِ بانکی
برای ِ باز کَردَن ِ یک حسابِ بانکی، اوّل لازم است که یک فُرم ِ دَرخواست پُر کنید. این فُرم را می تَوانید از کارمند های بانک بگیرید. فرم را با یک کارتِ شِناسائی به بانک ببرید. در بانک فُرم درخواستِ شما توسطِ رَئیس ِ بانک یا مَسؤول ِ حِساب ها اِمضاء می شَوَد و به شُما یک کار تِ بانک داده می شَوَد. شُما می تَوانید از این کارت برای ِ پَرداخت قبض ِ آب، برق، تِلِفُن یا گاز استِفاده کُنید.

Opening a Bank Account

To open a bank account, you first need to fill out an application form. You can get this form from bank tellers. Take the form and an identification card to the bank. At the bank, your application form is signed by the head of the bank or the accounts officer, and a bank card is given to you. You can use this card to pay water, electricity, telephone, or gas bills.

form	/form/	فُرم
application	/dær-xast/	دَرخواست
full	/por/	پُر
to fill	/por kærd-æn/	پُر کَردَن
to get	/gereft-æn/ (/gir/)	گِرفتَن (گیر)
signature	/emza'/	اِمضاء
card	/kart/	کارت

12H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Major Iranian Cities

Iran has several large cities, each of which has a certain historical and cultural significance. Tehran, the capital and by far the largest city, is the busiest one of all. It is the second most populous city in the Middle East, after Cairo. In addition to being the seat of the government, Tehran is also the center of most of the socioeconomic activity in the country.

Iran's second largest city is مَشهَد (/mæšhæd/, Mashad). Mashad is the most religiously significant city of Iran, as it is where the Shiites' eighth imam is buried. It is estimated that twelve million pilgrims visit Mashad every year. اصفَهان (/esfæhan/, Esfahan, also spelled Isfahan) and شیراز (/širaz/, Shiraz) are arguably the cultural capitals of Iran. Esfahan has been designated a World Heritage city by UNESCO. The city is even older than Persia itself, and today a great many historical sites are still standing for visitors to enjoy. Shiraz is also older than the Persian Empire. Both cities have been capitals of the country at some point during their history, and they house the tombs of many prominent literary, scientific, philosophical, and religious figures.

Exercises

A. Rewrite these sentences in the polite past tense, as in the example.

ما چند سؤال داریم.

ما چند سؤال داشتیم.

۱. می خواهم شما را ببینم. ________.

۲. با مَن کار دارید؟* ________؟

*با کَسی کار داشتَن is an idiom for *to want to see someone* or *to want to talk to someone.*

۳. با آقای پیامی کار دارَم. ________.

٤. می خواهم این قبضِ آب را پرداخت کنم. ________.

٥. شما با آقای پیامی کار دارید؟ ________؟

B. Turn these active sentences into passive constructions.

۱. مانی ماشین را می شوید. ________.

۲. بسیاری از ایرانی ها قالی می بافَند. ________.

۳. کسی این بسته ها را بَر می دارَد. ________.

٤. او چند سؤال می پُرسَد. ________.

٥. کَسی آن میوه ها را می خورَد. ________.

C. Turn these active sentences into middle voice constructions.

۱. مَردُم حُسِینی را انتخاب می کُنَند. ________.

۲. کسی دَرِ کِلاس را باز کَرد. ________.

۳. مانی پولِ آب را پرداخت خواهَد کَرد. ________.

٤. مَردُم آن بَرنامه را تماشا کَردَند. ________.

٥. آنها این پیراهَن ها را تولید می کُنَند. ________.

D. Fill in the blanks using the words given.

پُست   پُست خانه   وَزن   می خواستَم   پَرداخت

صَف   تَمبر   نامه

چَند روز پیش، مَن __(۱)__ یِک __(۲)__
به مَشهَد __(۳)__ کُنَم. مَن دَر خانه __(٤)__
نَداشتَم. به __(٥)__ رَفتَم. آنجا، کارمَندِ پُست نامه را __(٦)__
کَرد و مَن پولِ لازم را __(۷)__ کَردَم.

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 2   B. 3   C. 1   D. 1   E. 2

Exercises

A.

۱. می خواستَم شما را ببینم.
۲. با مَن کار داشتید؟
۳. با آقای پیامی کار داشتَم.
٤. می خواستَم این قبض را پرداخت کنم.
٥. شما با آقای پیامی کار داشتید؟

B.

۱. ماشین (تـوسطِ مانی) شُسته می شَوَد.
۲. قالی (توسط بسیاری از ایرانی ها) بافته می شَوَد.
۳. این بَسته ها (توسطِ کَسی) بَرداشته می شَوَد.
٤. چَند سؤال (توسطِ او) پُرسیده می شَوَد.
٥. آن میوه ها (تـوسطِ کَسی) خورده می شَوَد.

C.

۱. حسینی (توسطِ مردم) انتخاب می شَوَد.
۲. دَرِ کلاس (توسطِ کَسی) باز شُد.
۳. پولِ آب (توسطِ مانی) پَرداخت خواهَد شُد.
۴. برنامه (توسط مردم) تماشا شد.
٥. این پیراهَن ها (توسطِ آنها) تولید می شَوَد.

D.

۱. می خواستَم ۲. نامه ۳. پُست ٤. تَمبر ٥. پُست خانه
٦. وَزن ۷. پَرداخت

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Let's go online and learn a little bit more about Shiraz. Visit www.wikipedia.org and, under the languages with 10,000+ articles, find فارسی and click on it. Then, under علوم ریاضی و طبیعی (/olum-e riyazi væ tæbi'i/, mathematical and natural sciences), find جغرافیا (/joqrafiya/, geography). Under جستارهای وابسته (/jostar-ha-ye vabæst-e/, related searches), find ایران (Iran). Under the heading استان ها (/ostan-ha/, provinces), you should be able to find فارس (/fars/, Fars)—by the way, this is where *Farsi* actually comes from. In the article about Fars province, you will see a list of cities. شیراز (/širaz/, Shiraz) is on this list.

Now that you are looking at the article about Shiraz, let's see if you can find the answers to the following questions:

- What is the population of Shiraz?

  Hint: The word for population is جَمعیَّت (/jæm'iyyæt/).

- What is the rank of Shiraz in terms of population among Iranian cities?

  Hint: Look for the words اولین، دومین، سومین، چهارمین، پنجمین، ششمین، . . .

- How far is Shiraz from Tehran?

  Hint: Look for the word کیلومتر (/kilu-metr/, kilometer).

Record these facts about Shiraz in your language journal. You might want to follow the link to تختِ جَمشید (/tæxt-e jæmšid/, Persepolis) and print out a picture of it for your journal, too.

LESSON

13

First Day at Work

In this lesson, you'll learn words and phrases related to jobs and the office environment. You will also learn to use subordinate clauses with *when*. Manner adverbs and the use of the modal verb **باید** (/bayæd/, must) are other grammar topics that we cover here. Are you ready for some vocabulary warm-up?

13A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

enthusiasm	/eštiyaq/	اِشتیاق
international affairs	/omur-e beyn-ol-melæl/	اُمورِ بینُ المِلَل
part, section, department	/bæxš/	بَخش
How do you do?	/xoš-væqt-æm?/	خوشوَقتَم؟
only	/fæqæt/	فَقَط
managing director	/modir amel/	مُدیر عامِل
leave of absence	/morxæs-i/	مُرخَصی
secretary	/monši/	مُنشی
to show	/nešan dad-æn/	نِشان دادَن
when	/væqti/	وَقتی

13B. DIALOGUE

Mani's company has hired a new employee named **شیوا میلانی** (/šiva milani/, Shiva Milani). She is a foreign affairs manager and it is her first day on the job. Mani is greeting her. Listen to their conversation.

مانی: خانُمِ میلانی؟ سَلام. مَن مانیِ پَیامی مدیر عامِلِ شِرکَت هَستَم.

:/mani/ /xanom-e milani? sælam. mæn mani-ye pæyami modir amel-e šerkæt hæst-æm./

شیوا: خوشوقتَم.

:/šiva/ /xoš-væqt-æm./

مانی: به شِرکَتِ ما خوش آمدین (آمَدید). مَن دَفتَرِتون رو بِهِتون نِشون می دَم (نشان می دهم).

:/mani/ /be šerkæt-e ma xoš amæd-in (amæd-id). mæn dæftær-etun ro be-hetun nešun mi-d-æm (nešan mi-dæh-æm)./

شیوا: خیلی مَمنون . . . بَخشِ اُمورِ بین المِلَل چَند تا کارمَند داره؟

:/šiva/ /xeyli mæmnun . . . bæxš-e omur-e beyn-ol-melæl čænd ta kar-mænd dar-e?/

مانی: شِش نَفَر. مُنشیِ شُما خانُمِ دیداری هَستَن.

:/mani/ /šeš næfær. monši-ye šoma xanom-e didari hæst-æn./

شیوا: این بَخش فَقَط یه مُنشی داره؟

:/šiva/ /in bæxš fæqæt ye monši dar-e?/

مانی: بَله، وَلی وَقتی خانُمِ دیداری مُرخَصی هَستَن، آقای نوری بایَد به جایِ ایشون کار کُنَن (کار کنند).

:/mani/ /bæle, væli væqti xanom-e didari morxæs-i hæst-æn, aqa-ye nuri bayæd be jay-e išun kar kon-æn (kar kon-ænd)./

شیوا: بسیار خوب.

:/šiva/ /besiyar xob./

مانی: بفرمایین. این هَم دَفتَرِ شُما. ما با اِشتیاق مُنتَظِرِ وُرودِ شُما بودیم.

:/mani/ /befærma-yin. in hæm dæftær-e šoma. ma ba eštiyaq montæzer-e vorud-e šoma bud-im./

شیوا: مُتشَکّرَم. مَن هَم هَمینطور.

:/šiva/ /motšakker-æm. mæn hæm hæmin-tor./

Mani: Ms. Milani? Hello. I am Mani Payami, the managing director of the company.

Shiva: How do you do?

Mani: Welcome to our company. I will show you to your office.

Shiva: Thank you very much. How many employees does the International Affairs Department have?

Mani: Six. Your secretary is Ms. Didari.

Shiva: Does this department have only one secretary?

Mani: Yes, but when Ms. Didari is on leave, Mr. Nuri works in her place (*lit.*, must work in her place).

Shiva: Very good.

Mani: Here you are. Here's your office. We were awaiting your arrival with enthusiasm.

Shiva: Thank you. So was I.

Comprehension Practice

Now answer the following questions based on the dialogue you just practiced.

A. What does Mani do at the company?

۱. مانی مدیرِ امورِ بین الملل در شرکت است.
۲. مانی مُنشیِ شیوا است.
۳. مانی مدیر عاملِ شرکت است.

B. What does Shiva say when Mani introduces himself?

۱. خوشوَقتَم ۲. خیلی مَمنون. ۳. سَلام.

C. How many employees does the International Affairs Department have?

۱. پَنج کارمند ۲. شِش کارمند ۳. هَفت کارمند

D. Who is the permanent secretary of the International Affairs Department?

۱. خانُمِ دیداری ۲. آقای نوری ۳. خانمِ میلانی

E. How does Shiva say *So was I*?

۱. بفرمایین. ۲. مَن هم همینطور. ۳. بسیار خوب

13C. VOCABULARY

bureau, office	/edare/	اِداره
market, bazaar	/bazar/	بازار
archive	/baygani/	بایگانی
file	/pærvænde/	پَروَنده
folder	/puše/	پوشه
to decide	/tæsmim gereft-æn/	تَصمیم گِرفتَن
holiday, vacation	/tæ'til/, /tæ'til-at/	تَعطیل، تَعطیلات
meeting	/jælæse/	جَلَسه
to answer	/jævab dad-æn/	جَواب دادَن
accountant	/hesab-dar/	حِسابدار
among	/dær miyan-e/	دَر میانِ
machine	/dæst-gah/	دَستگاه
again	/dobare/	دوباره
organization	/sazeman/	سازمان
occupation, occupations	/šoql/, /mæšaqel/	شُغل، مَشاغِل
person	/kæs/	کَس
binder	/kelasor/	کِلاسور
applicant, applicants	/motæqazi/, /motæqazi-yan/	مُتَقاضی، مُتَقاضیان
director, principal	/modir/	مُدیر
deputy, assistant	/mo'aven/	مُعاوِن
to hold, to keep	/negæh-dar-i kærd-æn/	نِگَهداری کَردَن
to teach	/yad dad-æn/	یاد دادَن
to learn	/yad gereft-æn/	یاد گِرفتَن

13D. KEY PHRASES

to go on leave	/(be) morxasi ræft-æn/	(به) مُرخَصی رَفتَن

to fire, to get fired	/exraj kærd-æn/, /exraj šod-æn)/	اِخراج کردن، اِخراج شدن
to do (a task/job), to get done	/ænjam dad-æn/, /ænjam šod-æn/	اَنجام دادَن، اَنجام شُدَن
calmly	/ba aram-eš/	با آرامِش
carefully	/ba deqqæt/	با دِقّت
hurriedly	/ba æjæle/	با عَجَله
slowly, quietly, softly, gently	/be aram-i/	به آرامی
Ms. Didari is late today.	/xanom-e didari em-ruz dir kærd-e./	خانُم دیداری امروز دیر کَرده.
Ms. Milani is at a meeting now.	/xanom-e milani æl'an dær jælæse hæst-ænd./	خانم میلانی الآن دَر جلَسه هَستَند.
to be out of order	/xærab bud-æn/	خَراب بودَن
to be in order, to be in working condition	/dorost bud-æn/	دُرُست بودَن
to fix, to get fixed	/dorost kærd-æn/, /dorost šod-æn/	دُرُست کَردَن، دُرُست شُدَن
fax machine	/dæst-gah-e fæks/	دَستگاهِ فَکس
copy machine	/dæst-gah-e kopi/	دَستگاهِ کُپی
workday	/ruz-e kar-i/	روزِ کاری
working hour	/sa'æt-e kar-i/	ساعتِ کاری
at work	/sær-e kar/	سَرِ کار
hastily	/æjul-ane/	عَجولانه
to get a leave, to grant a leave	/morxasi gereft-æn/, /morxasi dad-æn/	مُرخَصی گِرفتَن، مُرخَصی دادَن
enthusiastically	/moštaq-ane/	مُشتاقانه
customer, client	/moštæri/	مُشتَری
to interview, to get interviewed	/mosahebe kærd-æn/, /mosahebe šod-æn/	مُصاحِبه کردن، مُصاحِبه شدن
I'd like to apply for a position.	/mi-xast-æm bæra-ye kar dær xast kon-æm./	می خواستَم برایِ کار درخواست کُنَم.

13E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Names of Some Professions

In English, several suffixes are used to create names for professions or occupations. Some of these are *-er*, as in *painter* and *driver*, and *-ist*, as in *artist* and *pianist*. Persian also has such agent suffixes. Some of them are described below.

گَر (/-gær/) is used in many names of occupations, such as مِسگَر (/mes-gær/), کوزه گَر (/kuze-gær/), and کارگَر (/kar-gær/). مسگر is a craftsperson who makes dishes and pots from copper (مِس /mes/), a coppersmith. کوزه گر is a craftsperson who makes clay or ceramic vases (کوزه), a potter. And کارگر is a laborer, someone who does work (کار /kar/). A variant of this suffix, گار (/-gar/), is used in the word آموزگار (/amuz-gar/). آموز is the present stem of آموختَن (/amuxt-æn/, to teach). The word آموزگار, then, means *teacher*. Another common word for teacher is مُعَلِّم (/mo'ællem/), which has been borrowed from Arabic.

The suffix دار (/-dar/), which comes from the present stem of the verb داشتَن (/dašt-æn/, to have), is used in words like کِتابدار (/ketab-dar/), حِسابدار (/hesab-dar/), مَغازه دار (/mæqaze-dar/), and خانه دار (/xane-dar/). کتابدار is a librarian (a person who takes care of books). Recall that حِساب means *account*; therefore, حسابدار is a person who takes care of accounts, an accountant. Also recall that مَغازه means *shop*; therefore, مغازه دار refers to a person who takes care of a shop, a shopkeeper. Can you guess what خانه دار means? خانه means *house, home*; therefore, خانه دار is a person who takes care of the home, a homemaker.

The suffix مَند (/mænd/) refers to possession; therefore, دانِشمَند (/daneš-mænd/) is someone who possesses دانِش (/daneš/, knowledge), a scientist or scholar, and هُنَرمَند (/honær-mænd/) is someone who possesses art, an artist. This suffix isn't exclusively used for professions, though. For example, the word نیازمَند (/niyaz-mænd/) refers to a person who has نیاز (/niyaz/), a need. The word, then, means *needy*. Another example is the word عَلاقه مَند (/ælaqe-mænd/), which refers to a person who has عَلاقه (/ælaqe/, interest). The word علاقه مند, then, means *interested*.

There are many other more specific suffixes, as well. For example, the suffix جو (/ju/), which comes from the present stem of the verb جُستَن (/jost-æn/, to search), is used in words like دانِشجو (/daneš-ju/, university student) and هُنَرجو (/honær-ju/, art student). See if you can find other examples of such suffixes in the Farsi words you know and learn.

13F. GRAMMAR

Temporal Clauses with وقتی (که) (/væqt-i (ke)/, when)

We have already seen adverbs of time used in Farsi sentences. For example:

من دیروز به دانشگاه رفتم.
/mæn diruz be daneš-gah ræft-æm./
I went to the university yesterday.

آنها فردا از موزه دیدَن خواهند کرد.
/anha færda æz muze did-æn xah-ænd kærd./
They will visit the museum tomorrow.

In the sentences above, the words دیروز (/diruz/, yesterday) and فردا (/færda/, tomorrow) are adverbs of time. We can also have larger units, phrases or even clauses, that are used to refer to the time when an event takes place. Clauses expressing time can be introduced by وَقتی (/væqt-i/) or وَقتی که (/væqt-i ke/). These expressions both mean *when* and are used just as we use *when* in English. Look at these examples:

وَقتی که خانم دیداری مُرخَصی هستند، آقای نوری به جای ایشان کار می کنند.
/væqt-i ke xanom-e didar-i morxæs-i hæst-ænd, aqay-e nuri be ja-ye išan kar mi-kon-ænd./
When Ms. Didari is on leave, Mr. Nuri works in her place.

وَقتی فرهاد را دیدَم، پَیام تو را به او دادَم.
/væqt-i færhad ra did-æm, pæyam-e to ra be u dad-æm./
When I saw Farhad, I gave him your message.

When-clauses typically appear at the beginning of the sentence, as in the above examples.

If the clause refers to a counterfactual situation, a situation that doesn't hold, or a situation that has not happened at the time of utterance, then the verb in the clause takes the subjunctive mood. Look at these examples:

وَقتی مانی بیاید، پیام تو را به او خواهم داد.
/væqt-i mani biy-a-yæd, pæyam-e to ra be u xah-æm dad./
When Mani arrives, I will give him your message.

وَقتی شما به موزه بروید، فرشهای بسیار زیبایی می بینید.
/væqt-i šoma be muze be-ræv-id, færš-ha-ye besyar ziba-yi mi-bin-id./
When you go to the museum, you (will) see very beautiful rugs.

Note that in the first example of this section, وَقتی خانم دیداری مرخصی هستند (when Ms. Didari is on leave), we have used the declarative mood of the verb, هستند, as opposed to its subjunctive mood, باشند. This is possible because we are talking about a general rule and not a

single occurrence. Look at these examples:

وَقتی مانی را می بینم، پیام ها را به او می دهم.
/væqt-i mani ra mi-bin-æm, pæyam-ha ra be u mi-dæh-æm./
When I see Mani, I give him the messages.

وَقتی مانی را ببینم، پیام ها را به او می دهم.
/væqt-i mani ra be-bin-æm, pæyam-ha ra be u mi-dæh-æm./
When I see Mani, I will give him the messages.

The first example refers to a general rule, a habitual event: I give Mani the messages whenever I see him. The second example, on the other hand, may or may not refer to a habitual event; it can refer to a single event.

Expressing Manner

Expressions of manner are those optional phrases in sentences that describe the manner in which an event occurs. In English, as in Farsi, these can be adverbs (e.g., *carefully*) or prepositional phrases (e.g., *with care*).

In English, adverbs are created by adding the suffix *-ly* to adjectives (*careful* → *carefully, beautiful* → *beautifully*, etc.). In Farsi, many adverbs are created by adding the suffix ـانه (/-ane/) to the end of adjectives. Here are some examples:

مُشتاق (/moštaq/, eager) ← مُشتاقانه (/moštaq-ane/, eagerly)

عَجول (/æjul/, hasty) ← عَجولانه (/æjul-ane/, hastily)

صَمیمی (/sæmim-i/, friendly) ← صَمیمانه (/sæmim-ane/, in a friendly manner)

Note that in the last example, the ی in صمیمی has been dropped before ـانه is added.

Look at some examples using these adverbs:

مانی مُشتاقانه مُنتَظِرِ وُرودِ شیوا بود.
/mani moštaq-ane montæzer-e vorud-e šiva bud./
Mani was eagerly awaiting Shiva's arrival.

آنها نامه ها را عَجولانه نوشتند.
/anha name-ha ra æjul-ane nevešt-ænd./
They wrote the letters hastily.

او صَمیمانه از ما پَذیرایی کَرد.
/u sæmim-ane æz ma pæzir-ayi kærd./
He/She received us in a friendly manner.

In many cases, however, Farsi speakers use a prepositional phrase instead of an adverb. Typically these prepositional phrases contain the preposition با (/ba/, with) followed by a noun describing manner. Look at these examples:

با اِشتیاق (/ba eštiyaq/, with eagerness)

با عَجَله (/ba æjæle/, with haste)

با صَمیمیَّت (/ba sæmimi-yyæt/, with friendliness)

با دِقَّت (/ba deqqæt/, with care)

Here are some examples containing a prepositional phrase expressing manner.

مانی با اِشتیاق مُنتَظِرِ وُرودِ شیوا بود.

/mani ba eštiyaq montæzer-e vorud-e šiva bud./
Mani was awaiting Shiva's arrival with eagerness.

آنها نامه ها را با عَجَله نوشتند.

/anha name-ha ra ba æjæle nevešt-ænd./
They wrote the letters with haste.

او با صَمیمیَّت از ما پَذیرایی کَرد.

/u ba sæmimi-yyæt æz ma pæzir-ayi kærd./
He/She received us with friendliness.

The Modal بایَد (/bayæd/, must)

In lesson 9, you were introduced to the modal auxiliary شایَد (/šayæd/, may). You learned that the verb that follows this modal auxiliary must come in the subjunctive mood, as in

او شاید برود.

/u šayæd be-ræv-æd./
He may go.

In this lesson, we look at another modal verb: بایَد (/bay-æd/, must). This modal verb grammatically behaves exactly like شایَد; that is, it precedes the verb, and the verb comes in the subjunctive mood. Here are some examples:

آقای نوری باید به جای ایشان کار کنند.

/aqa-ye nuri bayæd be ja-ye išan kar kon-ænd./
Mr. Nuri must work in his/her place.

ما باید این مَقاله را با دقت بخوانیم.

/ma bayæd in mæqale ra ba deqqæt be-xan-im./
We must read this article carefully.

کارمَندان باید ساعتِ نُه سَرِ کار باشَند.

/kar-mænd-an bayæd sa'æt-e noh sær-e kar baš-ænd./
Employees must be at work at nine o'clock.

ما امشَب باید زود به خانه برویم.

/ma emšæb bayæd zud be xane be-ræv-im./
We have to go home early tonight.

13G. READING

The following is a simple letter of job offer. Read it and try to guess the meaning of any unknown words.

شرکت تِجاری استوار

آدرس: تهران، خیابان پیک، شماره ۱۲

تاریخ: ۱۱/۶/۸۵

خانم شیوا میلانی،

باید با خوشحالی به شما بگویم که شرکتِ استوار تصمیم گرفته است که شما را به عنوانِ مدیرِ بَخشِ امورِ بین المللِ شرکت استخدام کُنَد. مدیرانِ شرکت هَمه ی پَرونده های مُتَقاضیان را با دقّت مُرور کردند و پَرونده ی شما در میانِ مُتَقاضیان بهترین شناخته شُد. ما اُمیدوار هستیم که شما این پیشنهادِ کار را بپَذیرید و با اشتیاق منتظر ورود شما به شرکت هستیم

با احترام،

مانی پیامی

مدیر عامل

Ostovar Trading Company

Address: 12 Peyk Ave., Tehran

Date: Sept. 2, 2006

Ms. Shiva Milani,

With pleasure, I must tell you that Ostovar Company has decided to employ you as the company's Foreign Affairs Manager. The company directors reviewed all the applicants' files carefully, and your file was recognized as the best. We hope that you accept this offer, and we are eagerly awaiting your arrival at the company.

With regards,

Mani Payami,

Managing Director

respect	/ehteram/	اِحتِرام
to employ (to get employed)	/estexdam kærd-æn (šod-æn)/	اِستِخدام کردن (شدن)
hopeful	/omid-var/	اُمیدوار

as	/be onvan-e/	به عُنوانِ
to accept (accept)	/pæzir-oft-æn/ (/pæzir/)	پَذیرُفتِن (پَذیر)
to recognize	/šenaxt-æn/ (/šenas/)	شِناختَن (شِناس)
title	/onvan/	عُنوان
applicant (applicants)	/motæqazi/ (/motæqazi-an/)	مُتَقاضی (مُتَقاضیان)

13H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Tehran Grand Bazaar

Tehran Grand Bazaar is the pulsating heart of the city, located in the southeast Tehran, an area that has been settled for thousands of years. A bazaar is usually a covered marketplace. Tehran's Grand Bazaar is an immense maze of old arcades, all together covering about 6.2 miles (10 kilometers). Most of the standing buildings in the Bazaar date back to the nineteenth century; however, the concept of a bazaar has a much older history. Similar constructions in Iran have been claimed to date back to as early as 4000 BCE. The current bazaar in Tehran itself seems to have emerged during the Islamic period.

The arcades in Tehran Grand Bazaar house hundreds of shops specializing in trading anything you can think of, from the traditional rugs, jewelry, silk, and precious metals to today's high-tech products. Because it is a very important aspect of Iran's economy, history, and culture, Tehran Grand Bazaar is something you should definitely see or at least know about.

Exercises

A. Answer these questions using *when*-clauses and the information provided in the parentheses. The first one is done for you as an example.

شیرین کِی نامه را پُست کرد؟ (شیرین دیروز به پست خانه رفت)
وقتی شیرین دیروز به پست خانه رفت، نامه را پست کرد.

۱. فرهاد کِی دستگاهِ کُپی را دُرُست کَرد؟ (به فرهاد گُفتَم)

____

۲. آقای نوری کِی به جایِ خانم دیداری کار می کند؟ (خانم دیداری به مرخصی می رود)

____

۳. تو کِی این کتاب را به مانی خواهی داد؟ (مانی را ببینم)

۴. شیوا کِی به تهران آمَد؟ (در شرکتِ اُستوار استخدام شد)

۵. ما کِی به شیراز خواهیم رَفت؟ (پِدَرَم از کار برگَردَد)

B. Answer these questions using the adverbs or prepositional phrases provided.

۱. خانم دیداری چطور با مشتری صحبت کرد؟ (با آرامش)

۲. شبنم چطور مقاله را می خواند؟ (با دقّت)

۳. آقای پیامی چطور از خانه بیرون رفت؟ (با عجله)

۴. فرهاد چطور به خانه می رود؟ (به آرامی)

۵. او چطور به دیدَنِ دوستَش رَفت؟ (مشتاقانه)

C. Change these sentences by adding the modal باید and using the correct form of the main verb.

۱. همه کارشان را با دقت انجام می دهند.

۲. این کارها بزودی انجام می شوند.

۳. من ماهِ آینده به شیراز مسافرت می کنم.

۴. ما فردا برای خرید به بازار می رویم.

۵. دستگاهِ کپی تا آخَرِ این هَفته درست می شود.

D. Rearrange these sentences to form a dialogue.

۱. دوباره؟ دیروز آقای دیداری درستِش کرد.
۲. چون دیداری باید بداند که کار با دقت انجام نشده.
۳. می دانم، ولَی خیلی با عجله کار کرد.
٤. پس باید دوباره بهش تلفن بزنیم.
٥. دستگاهِ کپی خَرابه.
٦. چرا به کَس ِ دیگَری تلفن نمی زنی؟

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 3 B. 1 C. 2 D. 1 E. 2

Exercises

A.

۱. وقتی به فرهاد گفتم، او دستگاهِ کُپی را درست کرد.
۲. وقتی خانم دیداری به مرخصی می رود، آقای نوری به جایِ او (ایشان) کار می کند.
۳. وقتی مانی را ببینم، این کتاب را به او خواهم داد.
٤. وقتی شیوا در شرکتِ استوار استخدام شد، به تهران آمد.
٥. وقتی پدرم از کار برگردد، ما به شیراز خواهیم رفت.

B.

۱. خانم دیداری با آرامش با مشتری صحبت کرد.
۲. شبنم با دقت مقاله را می خواند.
۳. آقای پیامی با عجله از خانه بیرون رفت.
٤. فرهاد به آرامی به خانه می رود.
٥. او مشتاقانه به دیدن دوستش رفت.

C.

۱. همه کارشان را باید با دقت انجام بدهند.
۲. این کارها باید بزودی انجام شوند.
۳. من ماه آینده باید به شیراز مسافرت کنم.
٤. ما فردا باید برای خرید به بازار برویم.
٥. دستگاهِ کپی تا آخر این هفته باید درست بشود.

D.

٥. دستگاهِ کپی خَرابه.
۱. دوباره؟ دیروز آقای دیداری درستِش کرد.

۳. می دانم، وَلی خیلی با عجله کار کرد.
٤. پس باید دوباره بهش تلفن بزنیم.
٦. چرا به کَس ِ دیگَری تلفن نمی زنی؟
۲. چون دیداری باید بداند که کار با دقت انجام نشده.

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Imagine that you are applying for a job at شرکتِ تجاری استوار. Fill out this job application form. What are the words that you don't know? Can you guess what they mean? If you can't, feel free to look them up at http://www.farsidic.com.

شرکتِ تجاری استوار
فرم درخواست کار

نام:________ نام ِ خانوادگی:________ تاریخ ِ تولُّد:________
تحصیلات:________ رشته ی تحصیلی:________
چَند سال تجربه ی کار دارید؟________
حقوق ِ درخواست شده:________ ریال
لطفاً یک نُسخه از سابقه ی کاریتان را هم برای ما بفرستید.

LESSON

14

Let's Go to a Concert!

In this lesson, we will learn how to talk about recreation activities. We will also learn about *where*-clauses, the emphatic use of که (/ke/), and some useful adjective forms.

14A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

at all	/æslæn/	اصلاً
theater	/te'atr/	تِئاتر
recently	/taze-gi/	تازگی
hall	/talar/	تالار
to mention something, to talk about something	/hærf-e čiz-i ra zæd-æn/	حَرفِ چیزی را زَدَن
noise	/sær o seda/	سَر و صِدا
cinema, the movies	/sinæma/, /sinema/	سینَما
to be interested in, to be fond of	/ælaqe dašt-æn/	عَلاقه داشتَن
soccer	/futbal/	فوتبال
deaf	/na-šen-æva/	ناشِنَوا

14B. DIALOGUE

The Payami family is planning on taking Jim out this weekend. Shabnam has called Jim to ask him where he would like to go. Listen to their conversation as they decide what to do.

شبنم: الو، ببخشید. می تونَم با آقای جیم داگلاس صحبت کُنَم؟

/ælo, be-bæxš-id. mi-tun-æm ba aqa-ye jim daglas sohbæt kon-æm?/ :/šæbnæm/

جیم: خودَم هَستَم. بِفَرمایین.

:/jim/ /xod-æm hæst-æm. be-færma-in./

شبنم: سَلام جیم. شَبنَم هَستَم. زَنگ زَدَم بِپُرسَم که این جُمعه دوست داری چه کار کنی.

:/šæbnæm /sælam, jim. šæbnæm hæst-æm. zæng zæd-æm be-pors-æm ke in jom'e dust dar-i če kar kon-i./

جیم: نِمی دونَم. شما می خواهین چه کار کنین؟ می خواهید چه کار کنید؟

:/jim/ /ne-mi-dun-æm. šoma mi-xah-in id če kar kon-in (mi-xah-id če kar kon-id)?/

شبنم: می تونیم (می توانیم) یا بریم سینَما یا بریم تِئاتر.

:/šæbnæm/ /mi-tun-im (mi-tævan-im) ya be-r-im sinæma ya be-r-im te'atr./

جیم: من که تازگی سینما بودَم. خیلی هم به تِئاتر عَلاقه نَدارَم.

:/jim/ /mæn ke taze-gi sinæma bud-æm. xeyli hæm be te'atr ælaqe næ-dar-æm./

شبنم: خوب. مُسابِقه ی فوتبال چِطور؟ فوتبال نِگاه می کنی؟

:/šæbnæm/ /xob. mosabeqe-ye futbal če-tor? futbal negah mi-kon-i?/

جیم: حَرفِ مُسابقه ی ورزشی رو نَزَن. از جایِ پُر سَر و صِدا اَصلاً خوشَم نمیاد.

:/jim/ /hærf-e mosabeqe-ye værzeš-i ro næ-zæn. æz ja-ye por sær o seda æslæn xoš-æm ne-mi-yad./

شبنم: راستی، اُرکِسترِ سَمفونیِ تِهران این جُمعه کُنسِرت داره. می خواهی بریم اونجا؟

:/šæbnæm/ /rasti, orkestr-e sæmfoni-ye tehran in jom'e konsert dar-e. mi-xah-i be-r-im un-ja?/

جیم: پیشنَهادِ بَدی نیست. کُجا کُنسِرت دارن (دارند)؟

:/jim/ /piš-næhad-e bæd-i nist. koja konsert dar-æn (dar-ænd)?/

شبنم: تالارِ وَحدَت، همون جایی که دیروز از جلوش رَد شُدیم.

/talar-e væhdæt, hæmun ja-yi ke di-ruz æz jelo-š ræd šod-im./ :/šæbnæm/

جیم: کدام سَمفونی رواجرا می کنن (اجرا می کُنَند)؟

/kodam sæmfoni ro ejra mi-kon-æn (mi-kon-ænd)?/ :/jim/

شبنم: کاری که بِتهوون وقتی که ناشِنَوا بود نِوِشت.

/kar-i ke betoven væqti na-šen-æva bud nevešt./ :/šæbnæm/

جیم: سمفونیِ شماره ی نُه! عالیه! بریم همون جا.

/sæmfoni-ye šomare-ye noh! ali-ye! be-r-im hæmun ja./ :/jim/

شبنم: بسیار خوب. خُداحافِظ.

/besiyar xob. xoda-hafez./ :/šæbnæm/

جیم: خُداحافِظ.

/xoda-hafez./ :/jim/

Shabnam:	Hello? Excuse me. Can I speak with Mr. Jim Douglas?
Jim:	This is he (*lit.*, I am myself). What can I do for you?
Shabnam:	Hi, Jim. This is Shabnam (*lit.*, I am Shabnam). I called to ask you what you'd like to do this Friday.
Jim:	I don't know. What do you want to do?
Shabnam:	We can either go to the movies or go to the theater.
Jim:	I was at the movies recently, and I'm not very fond of the theater.
Shabnam:	Well. How about a soccer game? Do you watch soccer?
Jim:	Don't mention sports matches. I don't like noisy places at all.
Shabnam:	By the way, Tehran's symphony orchestra has a concert this Friday. Do you want us to go there?
Jim:	That's not a bad suggestion. Where are they having the concert?
Shabnam:	Vahdat Hall, the same place that we passed by yesterday.
Jim:	Which symphony are they performing?
Shabnam:	The work that Beethoven wrote when he was deaf.

Jim:	Symphony number 9! That's great! Let's just go there.
Shabnam:	Very well. Good-bye.
Jim:	Good-bye.

Usage Note: The verb بِفَرمایید (/be-færma-id/), which we have seen before, is used in a variety of situations. In the initiation stage of a telephone conversation, this expression is used to invite the other person to speak.

Spelling Note 1: Recall that the letter ئـ (called هَمزه /hæmze/) stands for the sound /'/, which means that the word تِئاتر is pronounced /te'atr/, meaning *theater*. This word has been borrowed from French *théatre*.

Spelling Note 2: The word اَصلاً is pronounced (/æslæn/). The diacritic ـً is used in many words of Arabic origin and is pronounced /æn/. It is often used as a suffix that creates adverbs from adjectives.

Comprehension Practice

Now answer these questions based on the dialogue you just practiced.

A. What plans did Jim have for Friday before he talked to Shabnam?

١. او می خواست به سینما برود.
٢. او می خواست به تِئاتر برود.
٣. او برنامه ای برای جُمعه نَداشت.

B. How would you say *Let's go to the movies* in Farsi?

١. بریم سینما
٢. به سینما عَلاقه نَدارم.
٣. من تازگیِ سینما بودم.

C. Why doesn't Jim like sports matches?

١. چون دوست دارد در خانه باشد.
٢. چون از سَر و صِدا خوشش نمی آید.
٣. او مسابقه های ورزشی را دوست دارد.

D. When does Tehran Symphony Orchestra have a concert?

١. این جُمعه
٢. جُمعه ی آینده
٣. امروز

E. How does Jim ask which symphony they are going to play?

١. چه کار می کنن؟
٢. کدام سمفونی را اجرا می کنن؟
٣. کجا سمفونی را اجرا می کنن؟

14C. VOCABULARY

orchestra	/orkestr/	اُرکِستر
cook	/aš-pæz/	آشپَز

cooking	/aš-pæz-i/	آشپَزی
to stand, to stop	/ist-ad-æn/ (/ist/)	ایستادَن (ایست)
to take	/bord-æn/ (/bær/)	بُردَن (بَر)
park	/park/	پارک
to watch	/tæmaša kærd-æn/	تَماشا کَردَن
place	/ja/	جا
thing	/čiz/	چیز
not busy or crowded, secluded	/xælvæt/	خَلوَت
by the way	/rast-i/	راستی
quiet	/saket/	ساکِت
symphony	/sæmfoni/	سَمفونی
traditional	/sonnæt-i/	سُنَّتی
busy, crowded, noisy	/šoluq/	شُلوغ
swimming	/šena/	شِنا
to swim	/šena kærd-æn/	شِنا کَردَن
film, movie	/film/	فیلم
concert	/konsert/	کُنسِرت
report	/gozar-eš/	گُزارش
match	/mosabeqe/	مُسابِقه
music	/musiqi/	موسیقی
successful	/movæffæq/	مُوَفَّق
painter	/næqqaš/	نَقّاش
painting	/næqqaš-i/	نَقّاشی
play	/næma-yeš-name/	نَمایِشنامه
same	/hæman/	هَمان
sport, exercise	/værzeš/	وَرزش

14D. KEY PHRASES

to perform	/ejra kærd-æn/	اِجرا کَردَن
number	/šomare/	شُماره

Where should we go today?	/emruz koja be-r-im?/	امروز کُجا بریم؟
What should we do this week?	/in hæfte če kar kon-im?/	این هَفته چه کار کنیم؟
What movie should we go see this week? (*lit.*, What movie should we go to?)	/in hafte če film-i ro be-r-im?/	این هَفته چه فیلمی رو بریم؟
Let's go see the movie . . .	/be-r-im film-e . . . /	بریم فیلمِ . . .
Farhang Cinema has a good movie.	/sinæma færhæng film-e xub-i dar-e./	سینَما فَرهَنگ فیلمِ خوبی داره.
Vahdat Hall is showing a good play (*lit.*, has put a good play).	/talar-e væhdæt næmayeš-name-ye xub-i gozašt-e./	تالارِ وَحدَت نَمایِشنامه‌ی خوبی گُذاشته.
There's a good match/game this week.	/in hæfte yek mosabeqe-ye xub hæst./	این هفته یک مُسابِقه‌ی خوب هَست.
noisy	/por sær o seda/	پُر سَر و صِدا
not noisy, with little noise	/kæm sær o seda/	کَم سَر و صِدا
spectator	/tæmaša-gær/	تماشاگَر
(orchestra) conductor	/ræh-bær-e orkestr/	رَهبَرِ اُرکِستر
reporter	/xæbær-negar/	خَبَرنِگار
to encourage, to urge, to applaud	/tæšviq kærd-æn/	تَشویق کَردَن
end	/payan/	پایان
player (of a musical instrument), players	/nævaz-ænde/, /nævaz-ænde-gan/	نَوازَنده، نَوازَندِگان

14E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

Weekend Actitivies

The workweek in Iran is from Saturday (**شَنبه**) to Thursday (**پَنج شَنبه**). Iran has a one-day weekend on Friday (**جُمعه**), when many people go hiking or go on a picnic. People who live in large cities like Tehran may take a day trip in the country and enjoy some time with family and friends playing games on a riverside. Often they set up a bar-

becue, but they may also go to a restaurant for lunch. It is common for locals in small suburban towns to allow travelers to enjoy their gardens for a charge. Owners of such gardens often set up several large wooden flatbeds for families to set up their picnics. They are a traditional substitute for picnic tables. People who don't like the outdoors or would rather spend the day in the city may choose to watch a soccer game or a movie, go shopping, or just enjoy a quiet day at home.

The Iranian film industry has greatly improved in the last few years with the production of many internationally acclaimed movies. You can learn more about Iranian movies and see some samples by visiting http://www.iranianmovies.com/.

14F. GRAMMAR

Adverbial Clauses with جایی که (/ja-yi ke/, where)

Recall that we can use adverbs of place (like اینجا /in-ja/, *here*, or آنجا /an-ja/, *there*) or prepositional phrases (like روی میز /ru-ye miz/, *on the table*, or بیرون اتاق /birun-e otaq/, *outside the room*) to specify where an action took place. Sometimes a place cannot be described with a simple adverb or a prepositional phrase, and we need a whole clause. Look at these examples:

I saw him there.

I saw him outside the room.

I saw him where that man is standing now.

In the first example, the place expression is simply an adverb; in the second example, the place expression is a prepositional phrase; and in the third, the place expression is a whole clause (*where that man is standing now*).

In Farsi, such clauses are made with جایی که / آن جایی که (/ja-yi ke/, /an ja-yi ke/, the/that place that, where). Look at these examples:

او را آنجا دیدَم.
/u ra an-ja did-æm./
I saw him there.

او را بیرونِ اتاق دیدَم.
/u ra birun-e otaq did-æm./
I saw him outside the room.

او را آن جایی که آن مَرد ایستاده دیدَم.
/u ra an ja-yi ke an mærd ist-ad-e did-æm./
I saw him where that man is standing.

In these sentences, the underlined parts also function as place expressions. The category of the first place adjunct is adverb, the category of

the second one is a prepositional phrase, and that of the third one is a clause. As you can see, a *where*-clause comes in the same place as other place expressions: just before the main verb in the sentence. Of course, it is also possible to mention the place expression first and then say the main clause, as in these examples:

آنجا او را دیدَم.
/an-ja u ra did-æm./
I saw him there.

بیرونِ اتاق او را دیدَم.
/birun-e otaq u ra did-æm./
I saw him outside the room.

آن جایی که آن مَرد ایستاده او را دیدَم.
/an ja-yi ke an mærd ist-ad-e u ra did-æm./
I saw him where that man is standing.

In these sentences, the speaker places more emphasis on the place. It's like saying, *There, I saw him (not here)*.

The difference between جایی که and آن جایی که is that آن جایی که is definite (refers to a known place), but جایی که is not necessarily definite—that is, it doesn't have to refer to a specific place (although it may). For example, if you say:

می خواهم بروم جایی که ساکت باشد.
/mi-xah-æm be-ræv-æm ja-yi ke saket baš-æd./
I want to go where it is quiet.

you are not referring to any specific place. Any quiet place will do. But if you say:

می خواهم بروم آن جایی که ساکت بود.
/mi-xah-æm be-ræv-æm an ja-yi ke saket bud./
I want to go where it was quiet.

you are referring to a specific place that you and your hearer know about.

Sometimes, for emphasis, Farsi speakers use the word هَمان (/hæman/, same) before many kinds of phrases, including place expressions. Look at these examples:

این جایی است که ما دیروز آمدیم.
/in ja-yi æst ke ma di-ruz amæd-im./
This is the place where we came yesterday.

این همان جایی است که ما دیروز آمدیم.
/in hæman ja-yi æst ke ma di-ruz amæd-im./
This is the same place where we came yesterday.

In the dialogue, we hear Shabnam say,

همان جایی که دیروز از جلوش رَد شدیم
/hæman ja-yi ke di-ruz æz jelo-š ræd šod-im./
The same place where we passed by yesterday.

Similarly, Jim says, بریم همان جا (Let's just go there). He could have simply said, بریم آنجا (Let's go there), but with همان, his sentence is more emphatic. He wants to go to that very same place.

It is also common to put the place expression at the end of the sentence, after the main verb. You just saw that in the above examples. This way the verb isn't separated from the rest of the sentence, which makes the sentence easier to produce and understand.

Using پُر (/por/, full), کَم (/kæm/, little), and بِدون ِ/بی (/bi, bedun-e/, without) to Make Adjectives

Farsi speakers often use پُر (/por/, plenty, full), کَم (/kæm/, little), and بِدون ِ/بی (/bedun-e/, /bi-/, without, -less) before a noun phrase to make adjectives. For example, the compound noun phrase سَر و صِدا (/sær o seda/) means *noise*, and پُر سر و صِدا (/por sær o seda/) means *noisy* or, literally, *full of noise*. Similarly, کَم سر و صِدا (/kæm sær o seda/) means *with little noise*, and بدون ِ سَر و صِدا (/bedun-e sær o seda/) and بی سَر و صِدا (/bi sær o seda/) mean *without noise* or *noiseless*. Look at these examples:

ماشین ِ پُر سَر و صِدا
/mašin-e por sær o seda/
noisy car

بَچّه ی کم سَر و صَدا
/bæčče-ye kæm sær o seda/
quiet child

کامپیوترِ ِ بی سَر و صِدا
/kampiyuter-e bi sær o seda/
noiseless computer

Other examples of adjectives with پُر and کَم are:

پُر کار / کَم کار / بی کار
/por kar/, /kæm kar/, /bi kar/
hardworking, slacker, unemployed

پُر بار / کَم بار / بی بار
/por bar/, /kæm bar/, /bi bar/
fruitful, with few results, with no results

Note: بار means *load* or *result*.

پُر اِستِقامَت / کَم اِستِقامَت / بی استقامت
/por esteqamæt/, /kæm esteqamæt/, /bi esteqamæt/
with much strength/stamina (strong), with little strength (weak), with no strength

Note: اِستِقامَت means *strength* or *stamina*.

پُر اِنِرژی / کَم اِنِرژی / بی انرژی
/por enerži/, /kæm enerži/, /bi enerži/
full of energy, with little energy, with no energy

Note: اِنِرژی means *energy*.

پُر چَربی / کَم چَربی / بی چَربی
/por čærb-i/, /kæm čærb-i/, /bi čærb-i/
full of fat (fatty), will little fat, with no fat (fat-free)

Note: چَربی means fat.

Emphatic که (/ke/)

The word که (/ke/) in Farsi has many different uses. You learned earlier that it is sometimes used as a subordinating conjunction, as in reported speech constructions.

فکر می کنم که مانی سَر کار باشد.
/fekr mi-kon-æm ke mani sær-e kar baš-æd./
I think that Mani is at work.

We have also seen this use of که in many constructions, including جایی که (/ja-yi ke/, where), discussed above.

We have also seen که used in other constructions. For example, in the dialogue, Jim says,

مَن که تازگی سینما بودم.
/mæn ke taze-gi sinæma bud-æm./
I was at the movies recently.

In spoken Farsi, sometimes که is used after a noun phrase or a pronoun for emphasis or for focusing the person or thing to which the noun phrase refers to as opposed to another. For example, the sentence من که تازگی سینما بودم can be more exactly translated to *As for me, I have recently been to the movies*, which implies that the speaker doesn't wish to go to the movies again, but other people might.

Consider another example. A child asks her father if she can take his wallet with her to school. The father says:

اون رو که نمی شه ببری.
/un ro ke ne-mi-š-e be-bær-i./
That, you can't take.

The sentence also implies, *You know you can't take that*. But the father may continue by saying:

وَلی این کیف رو می تونی ببری.
/væli in kif ro mi-tun-i be-bær-i./
But you can take this wallet.

Here are some more examples of the use of emphatic که.

- می خواهم با مانی صحبت کنم.
/mi-xah-æm ba mani sohbæt kon-æm./
I want to speak with Mani.

- مانی که اینجا نیست.
/mani ke inja nist./
But Mani isn't here.

- بریم پارک.
/be-r-im park./
Let's go to the park.

- ما که تازگی پارک بودیم.
/ma ke taze-gi park bud-im./
But we've recently been to the park.

14G. READING

Read this news report about a concert.

ارکستر سمفونی تهران شَبِ گذشته در تالار وحدت برنامه داشت. این ارکستر با یک رَهبَرِ جَدید کارَش را امسال شُروع کَرده است و بَرنامه‌ی آن سمفونی شماره ی نُهِ بتهوون بود. به گُزارشِ خَبَرنِگار ما، این کنسرت بسیار مُوَفَّق بود و تَماشاگَران تا چَند دَقیقه بَعد از پایانِ بَرنامه به تَشویقِ نَوازَندگان ادامه دادند. کنسِرتِ دیشَب یک مُوَفَّقیَّتِ بزرگ برای ارکستر سمفونیِ تهران بود.

Tehran Symphony Orchestra had a performance at Vahdat Hall last night. The Orchestra has started its work this year with a new conductor, and its first performance was Beethoven's Symphony no. 9. According to our reporter, the concert was very successful and the audience continued applauding the players for minutes after the end of the concert. Last night's concert was a great success for the Tehran Symphony Orchestra.

to continue	/edame dad-æn/	اِدامه دادَن
new	/jædid/	جَدید
number	/šomare/	شُماره
success	/movæffæq-iyyæt/	مُوَفَّقیَّت

14H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Persian Musical Instruments

Music is an integral part of the culture of any country, and Iran is no exception. In fact, many of Iran's greatest poets were musicians, too. Iran has several native traditional musical instruments. There are also some instruments commonly used in classical Iranian music that are shared by other cultures, as well. Some of Iran's most common musical instruments are تار (/tar/, tar), سه تار (/se tar/, setar), تَنبور (/tænbur/, tanbur), and عود (/'ud/, ud). These are all stringed instruments played with picks or fingers, like the guitar. The word تار /tar/ just means *string*. سَنتور (/sæntur/, santur or santour) is another very common instrument. سَنتور (meaning *one hundred strings*) is also known as the Persian dulcimer. It actually has seventy-two strings and is played with two light hammers. نی (/ney/, ney) is a wind instrument made from bamboo (the word نی means *straw*), and دَفّ (/dæff/, daf), تُنبَک (/tonbæk/, tonbak), and دایره (/dayere/, tambourine) are some percussion instruments. Stringed instruments played with bows are also used. ویولُن (/viyolon/, violin) is very common in classical Iranian music. Another more exotic stringed instrument is کَمانچه (/kæman-če/, kamancheh). The word کَمان (/kæman/) means *bow*, and کَمانچه means *little bow*. To see pictures of some of these instruments and hear what they sound like, visit these websites:

www.dejkam.com/music/iran_traditional/instruments

www.santur.com

en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Persian_music

Exercises

A. Combine these pairs of sentences into single complex sentences using *where*-clauses. Follow the example.

او را جایی دیدَم. آن مرد آنجا ایستاده.

او را جایی دیدم که آن مرد ایستاده.

۱. من آنجا غذا خوردم. دیروز آنجا بودیم. ______

۲. ما جایی می رویم. آنجا ساکت باشد. ______

۳. او جایی را دوست دارد. آنجا ساکت بود. ______

٤. من آنجا رفتم. تو به من گفتی. ______

٥. این همان جاست. تو دیروز اینجا بودی. ______

B. Rewrite these sentences using adjectives formed with پُر، کَم، بی/بدون as in the example.

این ماشین سر و صدا ندارد.
این ماشین بی سر و صداست.

۱. آن مَرد کار نَدارَد. ________
۲. این دَستگاه سر و صدا کَم دارد. ________
۳. این خانم خیلی کار می کند. ________
٤. جلَسه ی ما خیلی نتیجه داشت. ________
٥. کنسرت خیلی موفقیت داشت. ________

C. Answer these questions with the emphatic که, using the words in the parentheses, as in the example.

- می خواستم این کتاب را ببـرَم. (نمی توانی ببری)
- این کتاب را که نمی توانی بِبَری.

۱. می خواستم با آقای پیامی صحبت کنم. (رفته اند)

____

۲. دوست داری پیتزا (/pitza/, pizza) بخوریم؟ (تازگی پیتزا خورده ایم)

____

۳. ایمیلِ من را گرفتی؟ (کامپیوتر ندارم)

____

٤. غذای پُر چَربی می خوری؟ (دوست ندارم)

____

٥. شیراز را دوست داری؟ (شیراز را نَدیده ام).

____

D. Complete the following sentences using the words provided.

مسابقه ی نمایشنامه اجرا سر و صدا تماشاگران موفق

۱. ________ نوازندگان را تشویق می کردند.
۲. هفته ی گذشته یک ________ فوتبال تماشا کردیم.
۳. ارکستر سمفونی تهران سمفونیِ شماره ی شِشِ بتهوون را ________ کرد.
٤. آن فیلم خیلی ________ بود.

۵. ما در تئاتر ________ تماشا می کنیم.

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 3 B. 1 C. 2 D. 1 E. 2

Exercises

A.

۱. من جایی غذا خوردم که دیروز بودیم. or
من جایی که دیروز بودیم غذا خوردم.
۲. ما جایی می رویم که ساکت باشد. or
ما جایی که ساکت باشد می رویم.
۳. او آن جایی را دوست دارد که ساکت بود. or
او آن جایی را که ساکت بود دوست دارد.
٤. من آن جایی رفتم که تو به من گفتی. or
من آن جایی که تو به من گفتی رفتم.
۵. این همان جایی است که تو دیروز بودی.

B.

۱. آن مرد بی کار است.
۲. این دستگاه کم سرو صداست.
۳. این خانم پر کار است.
٤. جلسه ی ما پُربار بود.
۵. کنسرت پُر موفقیت بود.

C.

۱. آقای پیامی که رفته اند.
۲. ما که تازگی پیتزا خورده ایم.
۳. من که کامپیوتر ندارم.
٤. من که غذای پر چربی دوست ندارم.
۵. من که شیراز را ندیده ام.

D.

۱. تماشاگران ۲. مسابقه ی ۳. اجرا ٤. موفق ۵. نمایشنامه

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

The only way to master a language is to get exposed to it, and some of the best ways to get exposed to a language in natural situations, besides actually being in the country in which it is spoken, are to watch movies, listen to music, and read in that language. You are invited to visit the BBC Persian website at http://www.bbc.co.uk/persian/.

This is one of the most informative and up-to-date websites in Farsi. On the home page of the site, click on فَرهَنگ و هُنَر (/færhæng væ honær/, culture and art). Here you can read news and editorials about arts and entertainment. Surf this site and try to find a short article that interests you. Print it out for your language journal and read it, trying to guess the meanings of unknown words or looking them up.

Also look for links that say صدا (/seda/, sound) and ویدیو (/vidiyo/, video), and listen to real-life Farsi. Do this often to get used to naturally occurring speech in Farsi.

LESSON

15

A Hiking Trip

In this lesson, you will learn some words related to the outdoors. You will also learn about reflexive pronouns, as well as exclamatory and impersonal sentences. Are you ready for some vocabulary warm-up?

15A. VOCABULARY WARM-UP

height	/ertefa'/	ارتِفاع
sky	/aseman/	آسِمان
to climb	/bala ræft-æn/	بالا رَفتَن
what	/če, či/	چه، چی
tired	/xæste/	خَسته
I don't think so.	/fekr næ-kon-æm./	فکر نکنم.
foot (*measurement unit*)	/fut/	فوت
peak, summit	/qolle/	قلّه
mountain	/kuh/	کوه
(a piece of) cloud	/lække æbr/	لَکّه ابر

15B. DIALOGUE

This is the last week of Jim's visit to Iran, and he is on a daylong hiking trip with the Payami family on the mountains in northern Tehran. Listen to him talk to Shabnam about their surroundings.

جیم:	امروز چه روزِ قشَنگیه!
:/jim/	/emruz če ruz-e qæšængi-ye!/
شبنم:	آره. یک لَکّه ابر هَم توی آسمون دیده نمی شه (دیده نمی شود).

/are. yek lække æbr hæm tuy-e aseman did-e ne-mi-še (did-e-ne-mi-šævæd)./	:/šæbnæm/
اسمِ اون کوهِ بلند چیه؟	جیم:
/esm-e un kuh-e bolænd či-ye?/	:/jim/
کوهِ دَماوَند. اون بلندترین قُلّهِ دَر ایرانه.	شبنم:
/kuh-e dæmavænd. un bolænd-tærin qoll-e dær iran-e./	:/šæbnæm/
عَجَب! چقدر اِرتِفاع داره؟	جیم:
/æjæb! čeqædr ertefa' dar-e?/	:/jim/
پَنج هِزار و شِشصَد و چهار مِتر. تَقریباً هجدَه هِزار و چَهارصَد فوت.	شبنم:
/pænj hezar o šeš-sæd o čæhar metr. tæqrib-æn hej-dæh hezar o čæhar sæd fut./	:/šæbnæm/
پَس امروز نمی شه (نمی شود) اَزَش بالا رَفت.	جیم:
/pæs emruz ne-mi-š-e (ne-mi-šævæd) æz-æš bala ræft./	:/jim/
فکر نکنم.	شبنم:
/fekr næ-kon-æm./	:/šæbnæm/
به جاش از این صَخره می رَم بالا.	جیم:
/be jaš æz in sæxre mi-r-æm bala./	:/jim/
بیا پایین. خودِت رو خَسته می کنی.	شبنم:
/bi-ya payin. xod-et ro xæste mi-kon-i./	:/šæbnæm/
چَشم.	جیم:
/čæšm./	:/jim/

Jim:	What a nice day it is today!
Shabnam:	Yeah. There isn't a single cloud in the sky. (*Lit.*, Not even a single cloud is seen in the sky.)
Jim:	What's the name of that tall mountain?
Shabnam:	Mt. Damavand. It's the highest peak in Iran.
Jim:	Interesting! How high is it?
Shabnam:	Five thousand, six hundred four meters; approximately eighteen thousand, four hundred feet.

Jim:	Then we can't climb it today. (*Lit.*, Then it's not possible to climb it today.)
Shabnam:	I don't think so.
Jim:	I'll climb this rock instead.
Shabnam:	Get down. You'll exhaust yourself.
Jim:	Okay.

Usage Note 1: The term عَجَب (/æjæb/) is used to express great interest in or surprise about something that has just been said.

Usage Note 2: In the above dialogue, when Jim wants to know the height of Mt. Damavand, he asks:

چقدر ارتفاع داره؟
/če qædr ertefa' dar-e?/

which literally means, *How much height does it have?* When you want to know about the measurable properties of things, such as height, weight, length, and temperature, this is how you form your questions. For example, to ask about the weight of something, you say:

چقدر وزن داره؟
/če qædr væzn dar-e?/
How heavy is it? (*lit.*, How much weight does it have?)

Usage Note 3: چَشم (/čæšm/) is used to express a promise or commitment. It is a common and polite way to agree to do something that someone has asked you to do.

Comprehension Practice

Now answer these questions based on the dialogue you just practiced.

A. What type of day is it today?

۱. روزِ بارانی ۲. روزِ ابری ۳. روزِ قشنگ

B. What is the name of the highest peak in Iran?

۱. کوهِ سهند ۲. کوهِ دماوند ۳. بلندترین قله

C. How does Jim ask about the height of the mountain?

۱. چقدر ارتفاع داره؟ ۲. چقدر وزن داره؟ ۳. چقدر بلنده؟

D. What does Jim try to do instead of climbing Mt. Damavand?

۱. می خواست از صخره بالا برود.
۲. می خواست از کوه بالا برود.
۳. می خواست خسته بشود.

E. What does Jim say when agreeing to climb down the rock?

۱. بسیار خوب ۲. چَشم ۳. باشه

15C. VOCABULARY

easy	/asan/	آسان
bush	/bute/	بوته
wilderness	/biyaban/	بیابان
to climb down	/payin ræft-æn/	پایین رَفتَن
to go on a picnic	/pik nik ræft-æn/	پیک نیک رَفتَن
hill	/tæppe/	تَپّه
lawn, grass	/čæmæn/	چَمَن
meadow	/čæmæn-zar/	چَمَنزار
to lie down	/deraz kæš-id-æn/	دِراز کَشیدَن
tree	/deræxt/	دِرَخت
valley	/dærre/	دَرّه
field	/dæšt/	دَشت
to walk	/rah ræft-æn/	راه رَفتَن
river	/rud/, /rud-xane/	رود، رودخانه
to fall down	/zæmin xord-æn/	زَمین خوردَن
hard, difficult	/sæxt/	سَخت
stone, rock	/sæng/	سَنگ
desert	/sæhra/	صَحرا
deep	/æmiq/	عَمیق
to stroll	/qædæm zæd-æn/	قَدَم زَدَن
mountain	/kuh/	کوه
mountaineer	/kuh næværd/	کوه نَوَرد
mountaineering	/kuh næværd-i/	کوه نَوَردی
to go mountaineering/ hiking	/kuh næværd-i kærd-æn/	کوه نَوَردی کَردَن
to walk/drive around	/gærdeš kærd-æn/	گَردِش کَردَن
path	/mæsir/	مَسیر
to take a shortcut	/miyan bor zæd-æn/	میان بُر زَدَن

vast	/væsi'/	وَسیع

15D. KEY PHRASES

weather, climate	/ab o hæva/	آب و هَوا
Which route should we take?	/æz kodam mæsir be-ræv-im?/, /æz kodam mæsir be-r-im?/	از کُدام مسیر برویم؟، از کُدام مسیر بریم؟
This path is hard/easy.	/in mæsir sæxt/asan æst./	اینِ مَسیر سخت/آسان است.
with bad weather	/bæd ab o hæva/	بَد آب و هَوا
with good weather	/xoš ab o hæva/	خوش آب و هَوا
to be located	/qærar dašt-æn/	قَرار داشتَن
to score a goal	/gol zæd-æn/	گُل زَدَن
be careful	/moraqeb baš/	مُراقِب باش
be careful	/movazeb baš/	مُواظِب باش
It's clear/cloudy.	/hæva saf/æbr-i æst./	هَوا صاف/ابری است.
It's warm/cold.	/hæva gærm/ særd æst./	هَوا گَرم/سَرد است.
recreational sport	/værzeš-e moræffæh/	وَرزشِ مُرَفَّح

15E. CULTURE TOPIC 1

The Geography of Iran

Iran has an area of greater than 1.6 million square kilometers and is one of the most mountainous countries in the world. The two main mountain chains of Iran, اَلبُرز (/ælborz/, Alborz) and زاگرُس (/zagros/, Zagros), run from east to west and from northwest to southeast, respectively. These mountains almost surround the Iranian Central Plateau, which contains two large and uninhabited deserts. Two expanses of fertile lowland lie in the southwest, by the Persian Gulf, and in the north, by the Caspian Sea. This geography has afforded Iran a very diverse climate. The high mountains in the north are cold, the coastal plains by the Caspian Sea are mild, the Central Plateau is hot and dry, and the south is hot and humid. Tehran borders the Alborz mountains to the north, an ideal destination for hiking and picnics for the people in the capital.

15F. GRAMMAR

Reflexive Pronouns

Reflexive pronouns are used when an object is the same as the subject. For example, who do you see when you look straight into a mirror? Usually yourself. Words like *myself, yourself,* etc. are the English reflexive pronouns. Farsi has the following six reflexive pronouns.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS IN FARSI

myself	/xod-æm/	خودَم
yourself	/xod-æt/	خودَت
himself/herself/itself	/xod-æš/	خودَش
ourselves	/xod-eman/	خودِمان
yourselves, yourself (*sg. fml.*)	/xod-etan/	خودِتان
themselves, himself/herself/ itself (*sg. fml.*)	/xod-ešan/	خودِشان

As you can see, these pronouns are made with the word خود (/xod/, self) and the possessive suffixes ـَم (/-æm/), ـَت (/-æt/), ـَش (/-æš/), ـِمان (/-eman/), ـِتان (/-etan/), and ـِشان (/-ešan/).

Pronunciation Note: Recall that the possessive suffixes ـَت (/-æt/) and ـَش (/-æš/) are pronounced ـِت (/-et/) and ـِش (/-eš/), respectively, in spoken language.

In the opening dialogue of this lesson, when Jim says that he wants to climb a rock instead of Mt. Damavand, Shabnam jokingly tells him,

بیا پایین. خودِت رو خَسته می کُنی.
/biya payin. xod-et ro xæste mi-kon-i./
Get down. You'll exhaust yourself.

Here are some more examples of the use of reflexive pronouns.

او دیروز خودَش را زَخمی کَرد.
/u di-ruz xod-æš ra zæxm-i kærd./
He/She injured himself/herself yesterday.

اگَر در آب نِگاه کُنی، خودَت را می بینی.
/ægær dær ab negah kon-i, xod-æt ra mi-bin-i./
If you look in the water, you will see yourself.

مَن می خواهَم این ساعَت را بَرای خودَم بِخَرَم.
/mæn mi-xah-æm in sa'æt ra bæra-ye xod-æm be-xær-æm./
I want to buy this watch for myself.

ما خودِمان را دَر آینه می بینیم.
/ma xod-eman ra dær ayene mi-bin-im./
We see ourselves in the mirror.

Exclamatory Sentences

Sentences used to express surprise or great interest about something are called exclamatory sentences. English sentences like *What a nice day!* or *It is such a fast car!* are exclamatory.

Farsi exclamatory sentences are just like regular declarative sentences, but they start with چه (/če/) or عَجَب (/æjæb/), as in the following examples.

چه روزِ قَشَنگیه!
/če ruz-e qæšæng-i-ye!/
What a nice day it is!

چه آسِمانِ صافیه!
/če aseman-e saf-i-ye!/
What a clear sky it is!

عَجَب کوهِ بُلَندیه!
/æjæb kuh-e bolænd-i-ye!/
It is such a tall mountain!

عَجَب دَرّه ی عَمیقیه!
/æjæb dærre-ye æmiq-i-ye!/
It is such a deep valley!

Note that, just like in English, you can drop the verb in the sentence. So all of the following expressions are also possible in Farsi.

چه روزِ قَشَنگی!
/če ruz-e qæšæng-i!/
What a nice day!

چه آسِمانِ صافی!
/če aseman-e saf-i!/
What a clear sky!

عَجَب کوهِ بُلَندی!
/æjæb kuh-e bolænd-i!/
Such a tall mountain!

عَجَب دَرّه ی عَمیقی!
/æjæb dærre-ye æmiq-i!/
Such a deep valley!

It is also possible to explicitly mention the topic of your sentence in the beginning, before چه or عجب. But if you do that, then you must use the verb in the sentence, as in the following examples.

امروز چه روز قَشنگیه!
/emruz če ruz-e qæšæng-i-ye!/
What a nice day it is today!

دیروز چه آسِمانِ صافی بود!
/di-ruz če aseman-e saf-i bud!/
What a clear sky there was yesterday!

دَماوَند عَجَب کوهِ بُلَندیه!
/dæmavænd æjæb kuh-e bolænd-i-ye!/
Damavand is such a tall mountain!

آن عَجَب دَرّه ی عَمیقیه!
/an æjæb dærre-ye æmiq-i-ye!/
Such a deep valley that is!

Impersonal Construction

Certain sentences in Farsi do not refer to a particular person as the subject. They mention a general fact. Such sentences are called impersonal. For example, instead of saying:

باید برویم.
/bayæd be-ræv-im./
We must go.

which is very direct, we can, in a more indirect manner, say:

باید رفت.
/bayæd ræft./
One must go.

Or instead of directly saying:

این کار را نمی توانی بکنی.
/in kar ra ne-mi-tævan-i be-kon-i./
You can't do this (job).

you can say in a more indirect manner:

این کار را نمی توان کرد.
/in kar ra ne-mi-tævan kærd./
One can't do this (job).

Look at more example sentences.

امروز نمی شود از قله ی دماوند بالا رفت.
/emruz ne-mi-šæv-æd æz qolle-ye dæmavand bala ræft./
One cannot climb Mt. Damavand today.

این کار را نمی توان کرد.
/in kar ra ne-mi-tævan kærd./
This (job) can't be done. / One cannot do this (job).

باید روزی هشت لیوان آب نوشید.
/bayæd ruz-i hæšt livan ab nuš-id./
One should drink eight glasses of water a day.

As you can see, these sentences do not have a subject, and their verb is not inflected for any person.

Reflexive pronouns in impersonal sentences appear as خود (/xod/, self, oneself), without the possessive suffixes, as in the following examples.

می توانید خودتان را در این آینه ببینید.
/mi-tævan-id xod-etan ra dær in ayene be-bin-id./
You can see yourself in this mirror.

می توان خود را در این آینه دید.
/mi-tævan xod ra dær in ayene did./
One can see oneself in this mirror.

15G. READING

Read this passage about Mt. Damavand.

دماوند بلندترین قله ی ایران است. در روزهای صاف می توان دماوند را از تهران هم دید. کوهِ دماوند نـَزدیکِ دَرّه ی هَراز در اُستانِ مازَندَران قَرار دارَد. در پایینِ قله ی دماوند شهری با همان نام وجود دارد. شهرِ دَماوند یک شهر خیلی قدیمی است و آب و هوای خُنـَکی دارَد. مردم زیادی در تابستان برای مسافرت به دماوند می روند.

شانزده مسیر برای بالا رفتن از قلهی دماوند هست، ولی مسیر جنوبی از همه زیباتر است.

Damavand is the highest peak in Iran. Damavand can be seen even from Tehran on clear days. Mt. Damavand is located in Mazandaran Province near Haraz valley. Under Mt. Damavand there is a town with the same name. The town of Damavand is a very old town and has a cool climate. Many people travel to Damavand in the summer. There are sixteen routes for climbing Mt. Damavand, but the southern route is the most beautiful one.

15H. CULTURE TOPIC 2

Sports in Iran

Like citizens of any other country, most Iranians are avid sports fans. The most favorite sport in Iran is soccer. It is not unusual to see children playing mini soccer in the streets after school. The Iranian national soccer team is among the best in Asia, and some Iranian soccer players play in major European leagues. Iran is also among the world elites in wrestling and weightlifting. The martial arts are also very popular in Iran because of their low costs and great individual benefits. Among highly popular recreational sports, one can mention skiing, cycling, hiking, and climbing. By law, women in Iran are allowed to practice sports only in closed stadiums and without the presence of men.

Exercises

A. Fill in the blanks with the correct reflexive pronoun.

۱. مواظب باش. ________ را زخمی می کنی.

۲. بالای کوه، ما چند عکس از ________ گرفتیم.

۳. من دوست ندارم به صدای ________ گوش بدهم.

۴. آنها به ________ گُل زَدند.

۵. مانی به ________ گفت که نباید از آن مسیر برود.

B. Rewrite these sentences as exclamatory sentences.

۱. دیروز باران می بارید. ________!

۲. فوتبال ورزشِ سَختی است. ________!

۳. این بیابان هوای خُشکی دارد. ________!

۴. این کوهِ بزرگی است. ________!

۵. اینجا جای خوش آب و هوایی است. ________!

C. Turn these sentences into impersonals.

۱. از اینجا نمی توانیم پایین برویم. ________

۲. باید به دماوند مسافرت بکنیم. ________

۳. باید سبزیجاتِ تازه بخوری. ________

۴. نمی توانی از اینجا بروی. ________

۵. در تابستان نمی شود اسکی بکنی. ________

D. Fill in the blanks using the words provided.

صاف   ببینند   گذشته   رفتند   آسمان   کوه های

روز ___(۱)___ خانواده ی پیامی با جیم به ___(۲)___
شمالِ تهران ___(۳)___. هَوا خیلی ___(۴)___
بود. یک لَکّه ی ابر هَم در ___(۵)___ دیده نمی شد.
آنها می توانستند قله ی دماوند را به خوبی ___(۶)___.

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

A. 3   B. 2   C. 1   D. 1   E. 2

Exercises

A.

۱. خودت   ۲. خودمان   ۳. خودم   ۴. خودشان   ۵. خودش

B.

۱. دیروز چه/عجب بارانی می بارید!
۲. فوتبال چه/عجب ورزش سختی است!
۳. این بیابان چه/عجب هوای خشکی دارد!
۴. این چه/عجب کوه بزرگی است!
۵. ایجا چه/عجب جای خوش آب و هوایی است!

C.

۱. از انجا نمی توان پایین رفت.
۲. باید به دماوند مسافرت کرد.
۳. باید سبزیجاتِ تازه خورد.
۴. نمی توان از اینجا رفت.
۵. در تابستان نمی شود اسکی کرد.

D.

۱. گذشته   ۲. کوه های   ۳. رفتند   ۴. صاف   ۵. آسمان
۶. ببینند

INDEPENDENT CHALLENGE

Pick a map of a national or state park and label the landmarks and locations on the map with Farsi words.

ANSWER KEY

Comprehension Practice

[illegible]

Exercises

[illegible]

Glossary

Farsi–English Glossary

- Words are ordered according to the Farsi alphabet (see pages xiv).
- Verbs are given in their infinitive form.
- Nouns are given in their singular form.
- An irregular present tense stem of a verb is given in parentheses after the infinitive form.
- An irregular plural form of a noun is given in parentheses after the singular form of the noun.
- Alternative pronunciations of the same word are separated by a comma and appear within a single set of forward slashes. The formal pronunciation precedes the informal pronunciation.

آ /A/ /Æ/ /'/

آب	n.	/ab/	water
آب کِشیدَن	v.	/ab keš-id-æn/	to rinse
آبِ میوه	n.	/ab-e mive/	fruit juice
آبان	n.	/aban/	eighth month of the Persian calendar
آبی	adj.	/abi/	blue
آپارتِمان	n.	/aparteman/	apartment
آخَر	n.	/axær/	end
آخَر هَفته	n.	/axær-e hæfte/	weekend
آدرس	n.	/adres/	address
آذر	n.	/azær/	ninth month of the persian calendar

آرام، آروم	adj.	/aram, arum/	calm
آرامِش	n.	/aram-eš/	calmness, peace
آرَنج	n.	/arænj/	elbow
آره	inter.	/are/	yeah
آژانس	n.	/ažans/	agency
آسان، آسون	adj.	/asan, asun/	easy
آشپَز	n.	/aš-pæz/	cook
آشپزخانه	n.	/ašpæz-xane/	kitchen
آشپَزی	n.	/aš-pæz-i/	cooking
آقا	n.	/aqa/	sir, mister
آقای	adj.	/aqa-ye/	Mr.
آماده	adj.	/amade/	ready, prepared
آمَدَن (آ)	v.	/amæd-æn/ (/a/)	to come
آمریکا	n.	/amrika/	America
آموزگار	n.	/amuz-gar/	teacher
آن	art.	/an/	that
آن	pro.	/an/	he, she, it
آنجا، اونجا	adv.	/anja, unja/	there
آنها	pro.	/anha/	they
آیَنده	n.	/ayænde/	future, next
آینه	n.	/ayene/	mirror

ا /A/ /Æ/ /'/

اِبتِدایی	adj.	/ebteda-yi/	elementary
اُتاق	n.	/otaq/	room
اتاق خواب	n.	/otaq xab/	bedroom
اُتوبوس	n.	/otobus/	bus
اجازه دادَن	v.	/ejaze dad-æn/	to let, to allow
اُجاق	n.	/ojaq/	stove
اِحتِرام	n.	/ehteram/	respect
اَخبار	n.	/æxbar/	news

اِخراج کردن	v.	/exraj kærd-æn/	to fire (an employee)
اِخراج شدن	v.	/exraj šod-æn/	to get fired
اِداره	n.	/edare/	office
اِدامه دادَن	v.	/edame dad-æn/	to continue
اَدَبیّات	n.	/ædæbiyat/	literature
اُردیبِهِشت	n.	/ordibehešt/	second month of the Persian calendar
اُرکِستر	n.	/orkestr/	orchestra
از	p.	/æz/	of, from, since
از خواب بُلَند شُدن	v.	/æz xab bolænd šod-æn/	to wake up
اسپانیا	n.	/espaniya/	Spain
اُستاد	n.	/ostad/	professor
اُستان	n.	/ostan/	province
اِستِخدام کردن	v.	/estexdam kærd-æn/	to employ
اِستِخدام شدن	v.	/estexdam šod-æn/	to get employed
اِستِراحَت کَردَن	v.	/esterahæt kærd-æn/	to rest
اِسفَندَ	n.	/esfænd/	twelfth month of the Persian calendar
اِسکِناس	n.	/eskenas/	banknote
اسم	n.	/esm/	name
اشتیاق	n.	/eštiyaq/	enthusiasm
اصلاً	adv.	/æslæn/	at all
اِضافه	n.	/ezafe/	extra, addition
اِقامَت کَردَن	v.	/eqamæt kærd-æn/	to stay
اِقتِصاد	n.	/eqtesad/	economy
اِقتِصادی	adj.	/eqtesad-i/	economic
اِکسپرس	n.	/eksperes/	express
اَگَر، اگه	adv.	/ægær, æge/	if
اَلو	inter.	/ælo/	hello (telephone)
اِمروز	adv.	/emruz/	today

اِمضاء	n.	/emza'/	signature
اُمور	n.	/omur/	affairs
اُمید	n.	/omid/	hope
اُمیدوار	adj.	/omid-var/	hopeful
الآن	adv.	/æl'an/	now
اِنتِخاب شُدَن	v.	/entexab šod-æn/	to get elected, to get selected
اِنتِخاب کَردَن	v.	/entexab kærd-æn/	to elect, to select
اِنتِخابات	n.	/entexabat/	elections
اِنتِها	n.	/enteha/	end
اَنجام دادَن	v.	/ænjam dad-æn/	to do (a task/job)
اَنجام شُدَن	v.	/ænjam šod-æn/	to get done (a task/job)
اَنگُشت	n.	/ængošt/	finger
انگُشتِ پا	n.	/ængošt-e pa/	toe
اِنگِلیس	n.	/engelis/	England
اِنگِلیسی	n., adj.	/engelis-i/	English
او	pro.	/u/	he, she, it
اَوَّل، اَوَّلین	num.	/ævval/, /ævvalin/	first
آیا	adv.	/aya/	question particle (yes/no)
ایتالیا	n.	/italiya/	Italy
ایران، ایرون	n.	/iran, irun/	Iran
ایرانی، ایرونی	n., adj.	/irani, iruni/	Iranian
ایستادَن (ایست)	v.	/ist-ad-æn/ (/ist/)	to stand
ایشان، ایشون	pro.	/išan, išun/	he, she (*fml.*)
ایمِیل	n.	/imeyl/	e-mail
ایمِیل زَدَن	v.	/imeyl zæd-æn/	to e-mail
این	art.	/in/	this
اینتِرنِت	n.	/internet/	internet
اینجا	adv.	/inja/	here

با	p.	/ba/	with
باران، بارون	n.	/baran, barun/	rain
بارانی، بارونی	n.	/baran-i, baruni/	raincoat
باریدَن	v.	/bar-id-æn/	to fall (rain or snow)
باز کَردَن	v.	/baz kærd-æn/	to open
بازار	n.	/bazar/	market, bazaar
بازو	n.	/bazu/	arm
باسَن	n.	/basæn/	buttocks
بافتَن (باف)	v.	/baf-t-æn/ (/baf/)	to weave
باقِلا	n.	/baqela/	broad bean
بالایِ	p.	/bala-ye/	over
بالش	n.	/baleš/	pillow
بانک	n.	/bank/	bank
باید	aux.	/bayæd/	must
بایگانی	n.	/baygani/	archive
ببخشید، ببخشین	idiom	/bebæxšid, bebæxšin./	Pardon me, Excuse me.
بَچّه	n.	/bæčče/	child
بَخش	n.	/bæxš/	part, section, department
بَخشیدَن	v.	/bæxš-id-æn/	to excuse, to forgive
بَدَن	n.	/bædæn/	body
بَر طَرَف شُدَن	v.	/bær tæræf šod-æn/	to go away, to get resolved
بَرادَر	n.	/bæradær/	brother
برادر زاده	n.	/bæradær zade/	niece, nephew (brother's child)
برایِ	p.	/bæra-ye/	for
بَرداشتَن	v.	/bær dašt-æn/	to take (a course), to pick up
بُردَن (بَر)	v.	/bord-æn/ (/bær/)	to take
بَرف	n.	/bærf/	snow

بَرق	n.	/bærq/	electricity
بَرنامه	n.	/bærname/	program, plan
بُزُرگ	adj.	/bozorg/	large, great, big, grand
بُزُرگراه	n.	/bozorg-rah/	expressway
بزودی	adv.	/bezudi/	soon
بسته	n.	/bæst-e/	package
بسیار خوب	inter.	/besiyar xob/	very well, all right
بُشقاب	n.	/bošqab/	plate
بَعد	adj.	/bæ'd/	then, next
بَعد از	p.	/bæ'd æz/	after
بفرمایید، برفرمایین	idiom	/befærmayid, befærmayin./	After you, Here you are.
بُلند	adj.	/bolænd/	tall
بَلِه	inter.	/bæle/	yes
بلوز	n.	/boluz/	blouse
بِلیت، بِلیط	n.	/belit/	ticket
بُن بَست	adj., n.	/bon-bæst/	cul-de-sac, dead end
به	p.	/be/	to
به عُنوانِ	p.	/be onvan-e/	as
به مُرخَصی رَفتَن	v.	/be morxasi ræft -æn/	to go on leave
بَهار	n.	/bæhar/	spring
بَهمَن	n.	/bæhmæn/	eleventh month of the Persian calendar
بوته	n.	/bute/	bush
بوتیک	n.	/butik/	boutique
بودَن (هَست، اَست)	v.	/bud-æn/ (/hæst, æst/)	to be
بوسنی	n.	/bosni/	Bosnia
بیابان، بیابون	n.	/biyaban, biyabun/	wilderness
بیرونِ	p.	/birun-e/	outside
بیست	num.	/bist/	twenty

بیمار	n.	/bimar/	patient, ill
بیمارستان	n.	/bimar-estan/	hospital
بیمه	n.	/bime/	insurance
بین المِلَلی	adj.	/beyn-ol-melæl-i/	international
بینی	n.	/bini/	nose

پ /p/

پا	n.	/pa/	foot, leg
پا دَرد	n.	/pa dærd/	pain in the leg/foot
پارک	n.	/park/	park
پاساژ	n.	/pasaž/	mall
پاشنه ی پا	n.	/pašne-ye pa/	heel
پاکَتِ نامه	n.	/pakæt-e name/	envelope
پاکِستان	n.	/pakestan/	Pakistan
پالتو	n.	/palto/	winter coat
پانزدَه	num.	/panzdæh/	fifteen
پانصَد	num.	/pan-sæd/	five hundred
پایان	n.	/payan/	end
پاییز	n.	/payiz/	fall
پایین رَفتَن	v.	/payin ræft-æn/	to go down, to climb down
پَتو	n.	/pætu/	blanket
پُختَن (پَز)	v.	/poxt-æn/ (/pæz/)	to cook
پِدَر	n.	/pedær/	father
پِدَر بزرگ	n.	/pedær bozorg/	grandfather
پِدَر زن	n.	/pedær zæn/	father-in-law (wife's father)
پِدَر شوهر	n.	/pedær šohær/	father-in-law (husband's father)
پَذیرُفتَن (پَذیر)	v.	/pæzir-oft-æn/ (/pæzir/)	to accept
پُر	adj.	/por/	plenty, full
پُر کَردَن	v.	/por kærd-æn/	to fill

پَرداخت کَردَن	v.	/pærdaxt kærd-æn/	to pay
پَرَستار	n.	/pæræstar/	nurse
پُرسیدَن	v.	/pors-id-æn/	to ask
پِرو	n.	/peru/	Peru
پَرواز	n.	/pærvaz/	flight
پَرواز کَردَن	v.	/pærvaz kærd-æn/	to fly
پَروَنده	n.	/pærvænde/	file
پَریدَن	v.	/pær-id-æn/	to jump
پِزِشک	n.	/pezešk/	physician
پَس فَردا	adv.	/pæs færda/	day after tomorrow
پُست	n.	/post/	post, mail
پُستِ اِلکترونیک	n.	/post-e elekteronik/	e-mail
پُست خانه	n.	/post-xane/	post office
پُستِ زَمینی	n.	/post-e zæmin-i/	ground mail
پُست کَردَن	v.	/post kærd-æn/	to mail
پُستِ هوایی	n.	/post-e hæva-yi/	airmail
پِسَر	n.	/pesær/	boy, son
پسر دایی	n.	/pesær dayi/	cousin (mother's brother's son)
پسر عمه	n.	/pesær 'æmme/	cousin (father's sister's son)
پسر عمو	n.	/pesær 'æmu/	cousin (father's brother's son)
پسرخاله	n.	/pesær xale/	cousin (mother's sister's son)
پُشت	p.	/pošt/	back, behind
پُل	n.	/pol/	bridge, overpass
پَنج	num.	/pænj/	five
پَنجاه	num.	/pænjah/	fifty
پَنجِره	n.	/pænjere/	window
پنجشَنبه	n.	/pænj-šænbe/	Thursday
پوتین	n.	/putin/	boot
پوشه	n.	/puše/	folder

پوشیدَن	v.	/puš-id-æn/	to wear (clothes)
پول	n.	/pul/	money
پولِ خُرد	n.	/pul-e xord/	coins, small bills
پولِ دُرُشت	n.	/pul-e dorošt/	large bills
پول دادَن	v.	/pul dad-æn/	to pay
پیاده	adv.	/piyade/	on foot
پَیام	n.	/pæyam/	message
پیچ	n.	/pič/	curve
پیچیدَن	v.	/pič-id-æn/	to turn
پیراهَن	n.	/pirahæn/	shirt
پیش	adj.	/piš/	past, last
پیش از	p.	/piš æz/	before
پیش دانِشگاهی	adj., n.	/piš danešgah-i/	pre-university
پیشنَهاد	n.	/piš-næhad/	recommendation, suggestion
پیشنَهاد کَردَن	v.	/pišnæhad kærd-æn/	to recommend
پیک نیک	n.	/piknik/	picnic
پیک نیک رَفتَن	v.	/piknik ræft-æn/	to go on a picnic

ت /T/

تِئاتر	n.	/te'atr/	theater
تا	p.	/ta/	to, until
تابِستان، تابستون	n.	/tabestan, tabestun/	summer
تاریخ	n.	/tarix/	history, date
تاریک	adj.	/tarik/	dark
تازگی	adv.	/taze-gi/	recently
تازه	adj.	/taze/	fresh
تاکسی	n.	/taksi/	taxi
تالار	n.	/talar/	hall
تَب	n.	/tæb/	fever
تَپّه	n.	/tæppe/	hill
تَخت، تَختِ خواب	n.	/tæxt, tæxt-e xab/	bed

تَخته سیاه	n.	/taxte siyah/	blackboard
تَخفیف	n.	/tæxfif/	discount
تَراشیدن	v.	/tærašid-æn/	to shave
تِرم	n.	/term/	semester, term
تُشَک	n.	/tošæk/	mattress
تَشویق کَردَن	v.	/tæšviq kærd-æn/	to encourage, to urge, to applaud
تَصمیم	n.	/tæsmim/	decision
تَصمیم گِرفتَن	v.	/tæsmim gereft-æn/	to decide
تِعداد	n.	/te'dad/	number, quantity
تَعطیل (تَعطیلات)	n.	/tæ'til/ (/tæ'til-at/)	holiday (holidays, vacation)
تِلِفُن	n.	/telefon/	telephone
تِلِفُن کَردَن	v.	/telefon kærd-æn/	to make a phone call
تِلِفُن زَدَن	v.	/telefon zæd-æn/	to make a phone call
تِلِویزیون	n.	/televiziyun/	television
تَماشا کَردَن	v.	/tæmaša kærd-æn/	to watch
تماشاگَر	n.	/tæmaša-gær/	spectator
تَمبر	n.	/tæmbr/	stamp
تَن	n.	/tæn/	body
تِهران	n.	/tehran/	Tehran
تو	pro.	/to/	you (*sg.*)
تو	p.	/tu/	in, inside
توالت	n.	/tovalet/	toilet
تَوانِستَن (تَوان)	v.	/tævan-est-æn/ (/tævan/)	can, to be able to
تور	n.	/tur/	tour
توریست	n.	/turist/	tourist
تَوَسُّطِ	p.	/tævæssot-e/	by (in passive sentences)
تولید کَردَن	v.	/tolid kærd-æn/	to manufacture, to produce
تولید کُنَنده	n.	/tolid kon-ænde/	manufacturer, producer

تیر	n.	/tir/	fourth month of the Persian calendar

ث /S/

ج /J/

جا	n.	/ja/	place
جادّه	n.	/jadde/	road
جان، جون	n.	/jan, jun/	dear
جَبر	n.	/jæbr/	algebra
جَدید	adj.	/jædid/	new
جُستَن (جو)	v.	/jost-æn/ (/ju/)	to search
جَشن	n.	/jæšn/	celebration
جُغرافیا	n.	/joqrafiya/	geography
جُغرافی	n.	/joqrafi/	geography
جَلَسه	n.	/jælæse/	meeting
جُمعه	n.	/jom'e/	Friday
جُمهوری	n.	/jomhur-i/	republic
جُنوب	n.	/jonub/, /jænub/	south
جَواب دادَن	v.	/jævab dad-æn/	to answer
جوراب	n.	/jurab/	sock, stocking

چ /Č/

چاقو	n.	/čaqu/	knife
چای	n.	/čay/	tea
چِرا	adv.	/čera/	why
چِرا	inter.	/čera/	yes (to a negative question)
چِراغ	n.	/čeraq/	light, lamp
چِراغِ راهنَمایی	n.	/čeraq-e rah-næma-yi/	traffic light

چَشم	n.	/čæšm/	eye
چَشم پِزشک	n.	/čæšm pezešk/	ophthalmologist
چِطور	adv.	/četor/	how
چِک	n.	/ček/	check
چِکِ مُسافِری	n.	/ček-e mosafer-i/	traveler's check
چَمدان	n.	/čæmedan/	suitcase
چَمَن	n.	/čæmæn/	lawn, grass
چَمَنزار	n.	/čæmæn-zar/	meadow
چَند تا	n.	/čænd ta/	how many
چَند تا از	art.	/čænd ta æz/	a few of
چَندُمین	adj.	/čænd-om-in/	which (in order)
چَندین	adj.	/čændin/	several
چَنگال	n.	/čængal/	fork
چه کَسی	pro.	/če kæsi/	who
چَهار	num.	/čæhar, čehar, čahar/	four
چَهارده	num.	/čæhardæh, čehardæh, čahardæh/	fourteen
چَهارراه	n.	/čæhar-rah/	intersection
چَهارشَنبه	n.	/čæhar-šænbe/	Wednesday
چَهارصَد	num.	/čæhar-sæd/	four hundred
چِهِل	num.	/čehel/	forty
چون	conj.	/čon/	because
چی، چه	pro.	/či, če/	what
چیز	n.	/čiz/	thing
چین	n.	/čin/	China

ح /H/

حال	n.	/hal/	physical condition
حال	n.	/hal/	present (tense)
حَتماً	adv.	/hætmæn/	certainly

حَرفِ چیزی را زَدَن	v.	/hærf-e čiz-i ra zæd-æn/	to mention something, to talk about something
حَرف زَدَن	v.	/hærf zæd-æn/	to speak
حِساب	n.	/hesab/	account
حِساب باز کَردَن	v.	/hesab baz kærd-æn/	to open an account
حِسابِ پَس انداز	n.	/hesab-e pæs-ændaz/	savings account
حِسابِ پَس انداز باز کَردَن	v.	/hesab-e pæs ændaz baz kard-æn/	to open a savings account
حِسابِ جاری	n.	/hesab-e jari/	checking account
حِسابِ جاری باز کَردَن	v.	/hesab-e jari baz kærd-æn/	to open a checking account
حِسابدار	n.	/hesab-dar/	accountant
حمام	n.	/hæmmam/	bathroom
حمام کردن	v.	/hæmmam kærd-æn/	to take a bath
حمام گرفتن	v.	/hæmmam gereft-æn/	to take a bath
حَیاط	n.	/hæyat/	yard

خ /X/

خارِجی	adj.	/xarej-i/	foreign, international
خاصّ	adj.	/xass/	special
خاله	n.	/xale/	aunt (mother's sister)
خانم، خانوم	n.	/xanom, xanum/	lady, wife, Ms., Mrs., Miss
خانه دار	n.	/xane-dar/	homemaker
خانه	n.	/xane/	home, house
خانِواده	n.	/xanevade/	family
خَبَرنِگار	n.	/xæbær-negar/	reporter
خُداحافِظ، خدافظ.	inter.	/xodahafez./, /xodafez./	Good-bye.
خَراب بودَن	v.	/xærab bud-æn/	to be out of order

خُرداد	n.	/xordad/	third month of the Persian calendar
خَرید کَردَن	v.	/xær-id kærd-æn/	to shop
خَریدَن	v.	/xær-id-æn/	to buy
خُشک	adj.	/xošk/	dry
خُشک کردَن	v.	/xošk kærd-æn/	to dry
خَط	n.	/xætt/	line, script, handwriting
خَط کِشی	n.	/xæt keši/	street line
خَطِّ هَوایی	n.	/xætt-e hæva-yi/	airline
خَلوَت	adj.	/xælvæt/	not busy, not crowded, secluded
خُنَک	adj.	/xonæk/	cool
خوابیدَن	v.	/xabid-æn/	to sleep
خواستَن (خواه)	aux., v.	/xast-æn/ (/xah/)	to want
خواندَن (خوان)	v.	/xand-æn/ (/xan/)	to read
خواهَر	n.	/xahær/	sister
خواهر زاده	n.	/xahær zade/	niece/nephew (sister's child)
خواهِش می کُنَم.	idiom	/xaheš mi-kon-æm./	You're welcome.
خوب	adj.	/xub/	good
خوب	inter.	/xob/	okay
خود	n.	/xod/	self
خودَم	pro.	/xod-æm/	myself
خودَت	pro.	/xod-æt/	yourself
خودَش	pro.	/xod-æš/	himself/herself/itself
خودِمان، خودمون	pro.	/xod-eman, xod-emun/	ourselves
خودِتان، خودتون	pro.	/xod-etan, xod-etun/	yourselves, yourself (*fml.*)
خودِشان، خودشون	pro.	/xod-ešan, xod-ešun/	themselves, himself/herself/itself (*fml.*)

خوردَن (خور)	v.	/xord-æn/ (/xor/)	to eat, to drink (*colloq.*)
خورش	n.	/xoreš/	meat sauce
خورشِ فِسِنجان	n.	/xoreš-e fesenjan/	fesenjan (meat sauce)
خوشبَختانه	adv.	/xoš-bæxt-ane/	fortunately
خوشحال	adj.	/xoš-hal/	happy
خوشوَقتَم؟	idiom	/xoš-væqt-æm?/	How do you do?
خیابان، خیابون	n.	/xiyaban, xiyabun/	street
خِیلی	adj., adv.	/xeyli/	very, a lot

د /D/

داخِل	n.	/daxel/	inside
داخِلی	adj.	/daxel-i/	local, domestic
دادَن (دِه)	v.	/dad-æn/ (/de/)	to give
دارو	n.	/daru/	medicine
داروخانه	n.	/daru-xane/	pharmacy
داروساز	n.	/daru-saz/	pharmacist
داشتَن (دار)	v., aux.	/dašt-æn/ (/dar/)	to have, present progressive marker
داغ	adj.	/daq/	hot
دامَن	n.	/damæn/	skirt
دانِستَن (دان)	v.	/danest-æn/ (/dan/)	to know
دانِش	n.	/daneš/	knowledge
دانِش آموز	n.	/daneš amuz/	grade school student
دانِشجو	n.	/daneš-ju/	university student
دانِشکَده	n.	/daneš-kæde/	college
دانِشگاه	n.	/daneš-gah/	university
دانِشمَند	n.	/daneš-mænd/	scientist, scholar
دایی	n.	/dayi/	uncle (mother's brother)
دَبیرستان	n.	/dæbirestan/	high school
دُختر	n.	/doxtær/	girl, daughter

دختر خاله	n.	/doxtær xale/	cousin (mother's sister's daughter)
دختر دایی	n.	/doxtær dayi/	cousin (mother's brother's daughter)
دختر عمه	n.	/doxtær 'æmme/	cousin (father's sister's daughter)
دختر عمو	n.	/doxtær 'æmu/	cousin (father's brother's daughter)
دَر	p.	/dær/	in
دَر	n.	/dær/	door
دَر صَد	n.	/dær sæd/	percent
دِراز کَشیدَن	v.	/deraz kæš-id-æn/	to lie down
دِرَخت	n.	/deræxt/	tree
دَرخواست	n.	/dær-xast/	application
دَرخواست کَردَن	v.	/dær xast kærd-æn/	to apply (to, for)
دَرد	n.	/dærd/	pain, ache
دَرد کَردَن	v.	/dærd kærd-æn/	to hurt
دَرس	n.	/dærs/	course, lesson
دُرُست	adj.	/dorost/	right, just
دُرُست بودَن	v.	/dorost bud-æn/	to be in order, to be in working condition
دُرُست شُدَن	v.	/dorost šod-æn/	to get fixed
دُرُست کَردَن	v.	/dorost kærd-æn/	to fix
دَرّه	n.	/dærre/	valley
دَست	n.	/dæst/	hand
دَستِ شُما دَرد نکند/ نَکُنه.	idiom	/dæst-e šoma dærd nækon-æd /nækon-e./	Thank you.
دستشویی	n.	/dæstšuyi/	restroom
دَستگاه	n.	/dæst-gah/	machine
دَستمال	n.	/dæst-mal/	napkin
دَسته چِک	n.	/dæste ček/	checkbook
دَشت	n.	/dæšt/	field

دَفتَر	n.	/dæftær/	office
دِقَّت	n.	/deqqæt/	care, meticulousness
دَقیقه	n.	/dæqiqe/	minute
دُکتُر	n.	/doktor/	doctor, Dr.
دُکتُرا	n.	/doktora/	doctorate
دَکّه	n.	/dække/	kiosk
دَمپایی	n.	/dæm-pa-yi/	slipper
دَندان، دندون	n.	/dændan, dændun/	tooth
دندان پزشک	n.	/dændan pezešk/	dentist
دُنیا	n.	/donya/	world
دَه	num.	/dæh/	ten
دَهان، دهن	n.	/dæhan/, /dæhæn/	mouth
دو	num.	/do/	two
دوازدَه	num.	/dævazdæh/	twelve
دوباره	adv.	/dobare/	again
دور	adj.	/dur/	far
دوست داشتَن	v.	/dust dašt-æn/	to like
دوست	n.	/dust/	friend
دوش	n.	/duš/	shower
دوش گرفتن	v.	/duš gereft æn/	to take a shower
دوشَنبه	n.	/do-šænbe/	Monday
دوغ	n.	/duq/	yogurt drink
دولَت	n.	/dolæt/	government
دُوُّم، دُوُّمین	num.	/dovvom/, /dovvomin/	second
دَویدَن	v.	/dæv-id-æn/	to run
دِویست	num.	/devist/	two hundred
دِی	n.	/dey/	tenth month of the Persian calendar
دیدَن (بین)	v.	/did-æn/ (/bin/)	to see
دیدَن کَردَن	v.	/did-æn kærd-æn/	to visit
دیر کَردَن	v.	/dir kærd-æn/	to be late

دیروز	adv.	/di-ruz/	yesterday
دیشَب	adv.	/di-šæb/	last night
دیگَر، دیگه	adj.	/digær/, /dige/	other

ذ /Z/

ر /R/

رَئیس	n.	/ræ'is/	head, boss, chief
رَئیسِ جُمهور	n.	/ræ'is'-e jomhur/	president (of a country)
رادیو	n.	/radiyo/	radio
راستی	inter.	/rast-i/	by the way
رانِ پا	n.	/ran-e pa/	thigh
راه	n.	/rah/	way, road
راه رَفتَن	v.	/rah ræft-æn/	to walk
راهرو	n.	/rahro/	corridor
راهنمایی	n.	/rahnæma-yi/	guidance, advice
رَأی	n.	/ræ'y/	vote, ballot
رَأی دادَن	v.	/ræ'y dad-æn/	to vote
رایانه	n.	/rayane/	computer
رُبع	n.	/rob'/	quarter (*esp.* hours)
رزرو کَردَن	v.	/rezerv kærd-æn/	to reserve
رَسانه (رَسانه ها)	n.	/ræsan-e/ (/ræsan-e-ha/)	medium (media)
رستوران	n.	/resturan/	restaurant
رشته	n.	/rešte/	field of study, major
رَفتَن (رو)	v.	/ræft-æn/ (/ro/)	to go
رَنگ	n.	/ræng/	color
رَهبَر	n.	/ræh-bær/	leader
رَهبَرِ اُرکِستر	n.	/ræh-bær-e orkestr/	conductor (orchestra)
رَهگُذر	n.	/ræh-gozær/	passerby
روبروی	p.	/ru-be-ru-ye/	in front of, opposite

رود، رودخانه	n.	/rud/, /rud-xane/	river
روز	n.	/ruz/	day
روز کاری	n.	/ruz-e kar-i/	workday
روزنامه	n.	/ruzname/	newspaper
روستا	n.	/rusta/	village
روسَری	n.	/ru-sær-i/	scarf (women's)
رویِ	p.	/ru-ye/	on
روییدَن	v.	/ruy-id-æn/	to grow (plant)
ریاسَتِ جُمهوری	n.	/riyasæt-e jomhuri/	presidency
ریاضی	n.	/riyazi/	math
ریاضیات	n.	/riyaziyat/	mathematics

ز /z/

زانو	n.	/zanu/	knee
زَبان	n.	/zæban/	language, tongue
زَبان و ادَبیاتِ فارسی	n.	/zæban o ædæbiyat-e fars-i/	Farsi language and literature
زَخم	n.	/zæxm/	wound
زَخمی	adj.	/zæxm-i/	wounded, injured
زَدَن (زَن)	v.	/zæd-æn/ (/zæn/)	to hit, to beat
زَرد	adj.	/zærd/	yellow
زَمان	n.	/zæman/	time
زِمِستان	n.	/zemestan/	winter
زَمین	n.	/zæmin/	ground, earth, land
زَمین خوردَن	v.	/zæmin xord-æn/	to fall down
زَمینی	adj.	/zæmin-i/	surface
زَن	n.	/zæn/	woman, wife (*infml.*)
زیبا	adj.	/ziba/	beautiful
زیرِ	p.	/zir-e/	under, below
زیرپوش	n.	/zir-puš/	underwear
زیرپیراهَنی	n.	/zir-pirahæn-i/	undershirt

زیرگذر	n.	/zir-gozær/	underpass
زیست شناس	n.	/zist šenas/	biologist
زیست شناسی	n.	/zist šenasi/	biology

ژ /ž/

ژاپُن	n.	/žapon/	Japan

س /s/

سُؤال	n.	/so'al/	question
ساختِمان	n.	/saxteman/	building
سازمان	n.	/sazeman/	organization
ساعَت	n.	/sa'æt/	clock, watch
ساعت کاری	n.	/sa'æt-e kar-i/	working hour
ساعِد	n.	/sa'ed/	forearm
ساقِ پا	n.	/saq-e pa/	shin
سال	n.	/sal/	year
سالاد	n.	/salad/	salad
سالنِ پذیرایی	n.	/salon-e pæzirayi/	entertaining room
سالنِ/اتاقِ ناهارخوری	n.	/salon-e/otaq-e nahar xori/	dining room
ساندِویچ	n.	/sandevič/	sandwich
سَبز	adj.	/sæbz/	green
سبزی (سبزیجات)	n.	/sæbz-i/ (/sæbz-i-jat/)	vegetable (vegetables)
سَخت	adj.	/sæxt/	hard, difficult
سَر	n.	/sær/	head
سَرِ	p.	/sær-e/	at
سَر دَرد	n.	/sær dærd/	headache
سَر و صِدا	n.	/sær o seda/	noise
سَرد	adj.	/særd/	cold
سُرفه کَردَن	v.	/sorfe kærd-æn/	to cough
سَرما خوردِگی	n.	/særma xord-egi/	common cold

سَطح	n.	/sæth/	level
سَفَر	n.	/sæfær/	travel, trip
سِفید	adj.	/sefid/	white
سِکّه	n.	/sekke/	coin
سَلام	inter.	/sælam/	hello
سلام رساندن (رسان)	v.	/sælam resandæn/ (/resan/)	to send regards
سَمفونی	n.	/sæmfoni/	symphony
سُنَّتی	adj.	/sonnæt-i/	traditional
سَندَل	n.	/sændæl/	sandal
سَنگ	n.	/sæng/	stone, rock
سَنگین	adj.	/sængin/	heavy
سه	num.	/se/	three
سه شَنبه	n.	/se-šænbe/	Tuesday
سوتیَن	n.	/sutiyæn/	bra
سوختَن (سوز)	v.	/suxt-æn/ (/suz/)	to burn
سِوُم، سِوُمین	num.	/sevv-om/, /sevv-omin/	third
سی	num.	/si/	thirty
سیاه	adj.	/siyah/	black
سیزدَه	num.	/sizdæh/	thirteen
سیصَد	num.	/si-sæd/	three hundred
سینَما	n.	/sinæma, sinema/	cinema, movies
سینه	n.	/sine/	chest, breast

ش /š/

شام	n.	/šam/	dinner
شام خوردن	v.	/šam xord æn/	to have dinner
شامِل بودَن	v.	/šamel bud-æn/	to include
شانزدَه	num.	/šanzdæh/	sixteen
شایَد	aux.	/šayæd/	perhaps, maybe, may
شَب	n.	/šæb/	night

شَبنَم	n.	/šæbnæm/	dew, female name
شُدَن (شو)	v.	/šod-æn/ (/šo/)	to become
شِرکت	n.	/šerkæt/	company
شِرکَت کَردَن	v.	/šerkæt kærd-æn/	to take part, to participate
شُروع شُدَن	v.	/šoru' šod-æn/	to begin
شَست	n.	/šæst/	thumb
شُستن (شوی)	v.	/šost-æn/ (/šuy/)	to wash
شِش	num.	/šeš/	six
شِشصَد	num.	/šeš-sæd/	six hundred
شَصت	num.	/šæst/	sixty
شُغل، مَشاغِل	n.	/šoql/, /mæšaqel/	occupation, occupations
شِکَم	n.	/šekæm/	stomach, abdomen
شَلوار	n.	/šælvar/	pants
شُلوغ	adj.	/šoluq/	busy, crowded, noisy
شما	pro.	/šoma/	you (*pl., sg. fml.*)
شُما چِطور؟	idiom	/šoma četor?/	How about you?
شُماره	n.	/šomare/	number
شُمال	n.	/šomal/	north
شِمُردَن	v.	/šemord-æn/	to count
شِنا	n.	/šena/	swimming
شِنا کَردَن	v.	/šena kærd-æn/	to swim
شِناختَن (شِناس)	v.	/šenaxt-æn/ (/šenas/)	to recognize
شَنبه	n.	/šænbe/	Saturday
شِنیدَن	v.	/šenid-æn/	to hear
شَهر	n.	/šæhr/	city
شَهردار	n.	/šæhr-dar/	mayor
شَهریوَر	n.	/šæhrivær/	sixth month of the Persian calendar
شورت	n.	/šort/	shorts
شوهر	n.	/šohær/	husband

شِوید	n.	/ševid/	dill
شِوید باقِلا	n.	/ševid baqela/	rice dish with broad beans
شیرین	adj., n.	/širin/	sweet, female name
شیمی	n.	/šimi/	chemistry

ص /S/

صُبح	n.	/sobh/	morning
صُبحانه	n.	/sobhane/	breakfast
صبحانه خوردن	v.	/sobhane xord-æn/	to have breakfast
صُحبَت کَردَن	v.	/sohbæt kærd-æn/	to talk
صَحرا	n.	/sæhra/	desert
صَد	num.	/sæd/	hundred
صِدا	n.	/seda/	sound, voice
صَف	n.	/sæf/	line, queue
صِفر	num.	/sefr/	zero
صَمیمانه	adv.	/sæmim-ane/	in a friendly manner
صَمیمی	adj.	/sæmimi/	friendly
صَمیمیَّت	n.	/sæmimi-yyæt/	friendliness
صَندَلی	n.	/sændæli/	chair
صَندوق	n.	/sænduq/	box, chest
صَندوقِ پُست	n.	/sænduq-e post/	mailbox
صَندوقِ پُستی	n.	/sænduq-e post-i/	P.O. box
صَندوقِ رَأی	n.	/sænduq-e ræ'y/	ballot box
صورَت	n.	/suræt/	face
صورَت حِساب	n.	/suræt hesab/	bill

ض /Z/

ط /T/

طبقه یِ بالا	n., adv.	/tæbæqe-ye bala/	upstairs
طبقه یِ پایین	n., adv.	/tæbæqe-ye payin/	downstairs

طرف	n.	/tæræf/	side
طوسی، خاکِستَری	adj.	/tusi/, /xakestær-i/	gray
طول کِشیدَن	v.	/tul keš-id-æn/	to last, to take (time)

ظ /z/

ظُهر	n.	/zohr/	noon

ع /'/

عابِرِ پیاده	n.	/aber-e piyade/	pedestrian
عَجولانه	adv.	/æjul-ane/	hastily
عِراق	n.	/eraq/, /'æraq/	Iraq
عَزیز	adj.	/'æziz/	dear
عَصر	n.	/'æsr/	evening
عَطسه کَردَن	v.	/ætse kærd-æn/	to sneeze
عقب	n.	/'aqæb/	back
عَکس	n.	/æks/	picture, photograph
عَکس گِرفتَن	v.	/æks gereft-æn/	to take a picture, to photograph
عَلاقه داشتَن	v.	/ælaqe dašt-æn/	to be interested in, to be fond of
عَلاقه مَند	adj.	/ælaqe-mænd/	interested
عُلومِ اِجتِماعی	n.	/olum-e ejtema'i/	social sciences
عُلومِ اِنسانی	n.	/olum-e ensani/	humanities
عُلومِ طَبیعی	n.	/olum-e tabi'i/	natural sciences
عَمه	n.	/'æmme/	aunt (father's sister)
عَمو	n.	/'æmu/	uncle (father's brother)
عَمیق	adj.	/æmiq/	deep
عُنوان	n.	/onvan/	title

غ /q/

غَذا	n.	/qæza/	food

ف /F/

فارسی	n.	/fars-i/	Farsi, Persian
فَرانسه	n.	/færanse/	France
فَردا	adv.	/færda/	tomorrow
فِرستادَن (فِرست)	v.	/ferestad-æn/ (/ferest/)	to send
فِرستَنده	n.	/ferest-ænde/	sender
فَرش	n.	/færš/	carpet, rug
فُرم	n.	/form/	form
فَرهاد	n.	/færhad/	male name
فَرورَدین	n.	/færværdin/	first month of the Persian calendar
فُروشگاه	n.	/foruš-gah/	store
فَقَط	adj., adv.	/fæqæt/	only
فِکر کَردَن	v.	/fekr kærd-æn/	to think
فَکس	n.	/fæks/	fax
فِنجان، فنجون	n.	/fenjan, fenjun/	cup
فوتبال	n.	/futbal/	soccer
فوقِ لیسانس	n.	/foq-e lisans/	master's degree
فیزیک	n.	/fizik/	physics
فیلم	n.	/film/	film, movie

ق /Q/

قابلَمه	n.	/qablæme/, /qableme/	cooking pot
قاشُق	n.	/qašoq/	spoon
قاشُقِ چایخوری	n.	/qašoq-e čay-xor-i/	teaspoon
قاشُقِ غَذاخوری	n.	/qašoq-e qæza-xor-i/	tablespoon
قالی	n.	/qali/	rug
قانون، قَوانین	n.	/qanun/, /qævanin/	law, laws

قَبض	n.	/qæbz/	receipt, bill
قَبل از	p.	/qæbl æz/	before
قدری از	art.	/qædri æz/	some of
قَدَم زَدَن	v.	/qædæm zæd-æn/	to stroll
قدیمی	adj.	/qadimi/	old
قُرص	n.	/qors/	pill
قِرمِز	adj.	/qermez/	red
قشنگ	adj.	/qæšæng/	pretty
قَطار	n.	/qætar/	train
قَهوه ای	adj.	/qæhve-'i/	brown
قیمَت	n.	/qeymæt/	price

ک /K/

کابینتِ آشپزخانه	n.	/kabinet-e ašpæz xane/	kitchen cabinet
کاپشِن	n.	/kapšen/	jacket
کار	n.	/kar/	work, job
کار کَردَن	v.	/kar kærdæn/	to work
کارت	n.	/kart/	card
کارد	n.	/kard/	knife
کارگَر	n.	/kar-gær/	laborer
کارمَند	n.	/kar-mænd/	employee, clerk
کارمَندِ بانک	n.	/kar-mænd-e bank/	bank clerk/teller
کارشِناسیِ اَرشَد	n.	/karšenasi-ye æršæd/	master's degree
کامپیوتِر	n.	/kampiyuter/	computer
کانادا	n.	/kanada/	Canada
کاندیدا	n.	/kandida/	candidate
کُت	n.	/kot/	coat
کُت و شَلوار	n.	/kot o šælvar/	suit
کِتابخانه	n.	/ketab-xane/	library
کِتابدار	n.	/ketab-dar/	librarian

کُجا	adv.	/koja/	where
کُدِ پُستی	n.	/kod-e post-i/	postal code
کِرایه	n.	/keraye/	fare, rent
کَردَن (کُن)	v.	/dærd-æn/	to do
کَس	n.	/kæs/	person
کَسی	pro.	/kæsi/	someone
کَشتی	n.	/kæšti/	ship
کَشیدَن	v.	/kæš-id-æn, keš-id-æn/	to pull, to draw
کِشوَر	n.	/kešvær/	country
کَفِ پا	n.	/kæf-e pa/	sole (foot)
کَفّاشی	n.	/kæffaš-i/	shoe store
کَفش	n.	/kæfš/	shoe
کِلاس	n.	/kelas/	class
کِلاسور	n.	/kelasor/	binder
کُلاه	n.	/kolah/	hat, cap
کَم	adj.	/kæm/	little
کَمَر دَرد	n.	/kæmær dærd/	(lower) backache
کَمی	adv.	/kæm-i/	some, a little
کِنارِ	p.	/kenar-e/	beside
کُنسِرت	n.	/konsert/	concert
کُنگو	n.	/kongo/	Congo
که	conj.	/ke/	that (*conj.*)
که، کی	conj., pro.	/ke/, /ki/	who
کُهنه	adj.	/kohne/	old
کوتاه	adj.	/kutah/	short
کوچِک	adj.	/kučæk/	small
کوچه	n.	/kuče/	lane, alley
کودَک	n.	/kudæk/	child
کوزه گَر	n.	/kuze-gær/	potter
کوه	n.	/kuh/	mountain

کوه نَوَرد	n.	/kuh næværd/	mountaineer, hiker
کوه نَوَردی	n.	/kuh næværd-i/	mountaineering, hiking
کوه نَوَردی کَردَن	v.	/kuh næværd-i kærd-æn/	to go mountaineering, to go hiking
کِی	adv.	/key/	when
کیف	n.	/kif/	bag, briefcase, wallet
کیلو	n.	/kilu/	kilogram
کیوسک	n.	/kiyusk/	kiosk

گ /G/

گاز	n.	/gaz/	gas
گالِری	n.	/galeri/	gallery
گِرفتَن (گیر)	v.	/gereft-æn/ (/gir/)	to get, to take
گُذاشتن (گُذار)	v.	/gozašt-æn/ (/gozar/)	to put
گُذشتَن (گُذر)	v.	/gozæšt-æn/ (/gozær/)	to pass
گُذشته	adj.	/gozæšte/	past (tense)
گَردِش	n.	/gærd-eš/	excursion
گَردِش کَردَن	v.	/gærdeš kærd-æn/	to walk around, to drive around
گِردو	n.	/gerdu/	walnut
گِرفتَن (گیر)	v.	/gereft-æn/ (/gir/)	to get
گَرم	adj.	/gærm/	warm
گِرَم	n.	/geræm/	gram
گُزارش	n.	/gozar-eš/	report
گُفتَن (گو)	v.	/goft-æn/ (/gu/)	to say
گُل	n.	/gol/	flower
گُل فُروشی	n.	/gol foruš-i/	flower shop
گُلدان	n.	/gol-dan/	vase, flowerpot
گَلو	n.	/gælu/	throat
گَلو دَرد	n.	/gælu dærd/	sore throat
گوش	n.	/guš/	ear
گوش دادَن	v.	/guš dad-æn/	to listen

گوش کَردَن	v.	/guš kærd-æn/	to listen
گوشت	n.	/gušt/	meat
گیرَنده	n.	/gir-ænde/	receiver

ل /L/

لازم	adj.	/lazem/	necessary, required
لِباس	n.	/lebas/	clothes
لِباسِ بَچّه گانه	n.	/lebas-e bæčče-gane/	children's clothes
لِباسِ زَنانه	n.	/lebas-e zæn-ane/	women's clothes
لِباسِ مَردانه	n.	/lebas-e mærd-ane/	men's clothes
لِباس فُروشی	n.	/lebas foruš-i/	clothes store, boutique
لوازمِ منزل	n.	/lævazem-e mænzel/	furniture
اثاثِ منزل/خانه	n.	/æsas-e mænzel/xane/	furniture
لیسانس	n.	/lisans/	bachelor's degree
کارشِناسی	n.	/karšenasi/	bachelor's degree
لیوان	n.	/livan/	glass

م /M/

ما	pro.	/ma/	we
مادَر	n.	/madær/	mother
مادر بزرگ	n.	/madær bozorg/	grandmother
مادر زن	n.	/madær zæn/	mother-in-law (wife's mother)
مادر شوهر	n.	/madær šohær/	mother-in-law (husband's mother)
مادِّه، موادّ	n.	/madde/, /mævadd/	material, materials
ماست	n.	/mast/	yogurt
ماشین	n.	/mašin/	car, vehicle, machine
ماشینِ ظرف شویی	n.	/mašin-e zærf šuyi/	dishwasher
ماشینِ لباس شویی	n.	/mašin-e lebas šuyi/	washing machine
مال	n.	/mal/	possession

مالِزی	n.	/malezi/	Malaysia
مالیدَن	v.	/mal-id-æn/	to rub
مانتو	n.	/manto/	manteau (women's long overall)
مانی	n.	/mani/	male name
ماه	n.	/mah/	month, moon
ماهی	n.	/mahi/	fish
مایع (مایعات)	n.	/maye'/ (/maye'at/)	fluid (fluids)
مُتأسّفانه	adv.	/mote'æssef-ane/	unfortunately
مُتُشَکِّرَم.	idiom	/motošækker-æm./	Thank you.
مُتَقاضی (مُتَقاضیان)	n.	/motæqazi/ (/motæqazi-an/)	applicant (applicants)
متوجه نشدم.	idiom	/motevajjeh næšodam./	I didn't get it.
متوَسّط	adj.	/motevæsset/	medium
مُثَلَثات	n.	/mosællæsat/	trigonometry
مَجلِس	n.	/mæjles/	parliament
مَجَلّه (مَجلّه ها، مَجَلات)	n.	/mæjælle/ (/majalle-ha, mæjallat/)	magazine (magazines)
مَجموعه	n.	/mæjmu'e/	collection
مُچِ دَست	n.	/moč-e dæst/	wrist
مچِ پا	n.	/moč-e pa/	ankle
مَحصول (مَحصولات)	n.	/mahsul/ (/mahsulat/)	product (products)
مَحَلِّ اِقامَت	n.	/mæhæll-e eqamæt/	residence, accommodation
مُدیر	n.	/modir/	director, principal
مُدیر عامِل	n.	/modir amel/	managing director
مُرخَصی	n.	/morxæs-i/	leave of absence
مُرخَصی رَفتَن	v.	/morxasi ræft-æn/	to go on leave
مُرخَصی دادَن	v.	/morxasi dad-æn/	to grant a leave
مُرخَصی گِرفتَن	v.	/morxasi gereft-æn/	to get a leave

مَرد	n.	/mærd/	man
مُرداد.	n.	/mordad/	fifth month of the Persian calendar
مَردُم	n.	/mærdom/	people
مِرسی	inter.	/mersi./	Thanks.
مُرغ	n.	/morq/	chicken, hen
مُرور کَردَن	v.	/morur kærd-æn/	to review
مَریض	n.	/mæriz/	patient, sick person
مَسؤول، مَسئول	n.	/mæs'ul/	agent
مُسابِقه	n.	/mosabeqe/	match
مُسافِر	n.	/mosafer/	traveler
مُسافِرَت	n.	/mosaferæt/	travel, trip
مُسافِرَت کَردَن	v.	/mosaferæt kærd-æn/	to travel, to take a trip
مُسافِرَت رَفتَن	v.	/mosaferæt ræftæn/	to travel, to take a trip
مُستَقیم	adj., adv.	/mostæqim/	straight
مِسگَر	n.	/mes-gær/	coppersmith
مِسواک	n.	/mesvak/	toothbrush
مِسواک کردن	v.	/mesvak kærd-æn/	to brush (one's teeth)
مِسواک زَدَن	v.	/mesvak zæd-æn/	to brush (one's teeth)
مَسیر	n.	/mæsir/	path
مُشتاق	adj.	/moštaq/	enthusiastic
مُشتاقانه	adv.	/moštaq-ane/	enthusiastically
مُشتَری	n.	/moštæri/	customer, client
مَشرِق	n.	/mæšreq/	east
مُصاحِبه کردن	v.	/mosahebe kærd-æn/	to interview
مُصاحِبه شدن	v.	/mosahebe šod-æn/	to get interviewed
مَصرَف کَردَن	v.	/mæsræf kærd-æn/	to use, to take
مَطَبّ دُکتُر	n.	/mætæbb-e doktor/	doctor's office
مُعاوِن	n.	/mo'aven/	deputy, assistant
مُعایِنه کَردَن	v.	/mo'ayene kærd-æn/	to examine
مُعَلِم	n.	/mo'ællem/	teacher

مَعلوم	adj.	/mæ'lum/	obvious
مَغازه	n.	/mæqaze/	shop
مَغازه دار	n.	/mæqaze-dar/	shopkeeper
مَغرب	n.	/mæqreb/	west
مَقاله	n.	/mæqale/	article, essay
مَقام (مَقامات)	n.	/mæqam/ (/mæqam-at/)	official (officials)
مِکزیک	n.	/mekzik/	Mexico
مَلافه، مَلحَفه	n.	/mælafe, mælhæfe/	(linen) sheet
مُمکِن	adj.	/momken/	possible
مَمنون	adj., inter.	/mæmnun/	grateful, Thanks.
مَن	pro.	/mæn/	I
مَن خَبَر نَدارَم.	idiom	/mæn xæbær næ-dar-æm./	I don't know, I have no idea.
مَن هَم همینطور.	idiom	/mæn hæm hæmin-tor./	Me, too.
مُناسِبَت	n.	/monasebæt/	occasion
مُنتَظِر	adj.	/montæzer/	waiting
مَنزِل	n.	/mænzel/	home, residence
مُنشی	n.	/monši/	secretary
مَنظَره	n.	/mænzære/	view
مِهر	n.	/mehr/	seventh month of the Persian calendar
مُهَندِس	n.	/mohændes/	engineer
مُهَندِسی	n.	/mohændesi/	engineering
مو	n.	/mu/	hair
موزه	n.	/muze/	museum
موسیقی	n.	/musiqi/	music
مُوَفَّق	adj.	/movæffæq/	successful
مُوَفَّقیَّت	n.	/movæffæq-iyyæt/	success
میان بُر زَدَن	v.	/miyan bor zæd-æn/	to take a shortcut
مِیدان	n.	/meydan/	roundabout, circle

میز	n.	/miz/	table
میز ناهارخوری	n.	/miz-e nahar xori/	dining table
میوه	n.	/mive/	fruit

ن /N/

ناشِنَوا	adj.	/na-šen-æva/	deaf
نامزَد	n.	/nam-zæd/	candidate, fiancé, fiancée
نامه	n.	/name/	letter
نامیدَن	v.	/nam-id-æn/	to name, to call
ناهار	n.	/nahar/	lunch
نَتیجه	n.	/nætije/	result
نَخِیر	inter.	/næ-xeyr/	no (*fml.*)
نَزدیک	adj., p.	/næzdik/	near
نُسخه	n.	/nosxe/	prescription
نِشان دادَن	v.	/nešan dad-æn/	to show
نِشانی	n.	/nešan-i/	address
نَفَر	n.	/næfær/	person
نَقّاش	n.	/næqqaš/	painter
نَقّاشی	n.	/næqqaši/	painting
نِگاه کَردَن	v.	/negah kærd-æn/	to look, to watch
نِگَهداری کَردَن	v.	/negæh-dar-i kærd-æn/	to hold, to keep
نَمابَر	n.	/næma-bær/	fax
نَمایِشنامه	n.	/næma-yeš-name/	play
نَه	inter.	/næ/	no
نُه	num.	/noh/	nine
نُهصَد	num.	/noh-sæd/	nine hundred
نو	adj.	/no/	new
نَوازَنده (نَوازَندِگان)	n.	/nævaz-ænde/ (/nævaz-ænde-gan/)	player (players) (music)
نَوَد	num.	/nævæd/	ninety

نوروز	n.	/noruz/	Persian New Year
نوزدَه	num.	/nuzdæh/	nineteen
نوشابه	n.	/nuš-abe/	soft drink
نوشِ جان!	idiom	/nuš-e jan!/	Enjoy your meal!
نِوِشتَن (نِویس)	v.	/nevešt-æn/ (/nevis/)	to write
نوشیدن	v.	/nušid-æn/	to drink
نوشیدَنی	n.	/nuš-id-æni/	drink
نَوه	n.	/næve/	grandchild
نیازمَند	adj.	/niyaz-mænd/	needy
نیم	n.	/nim/	half (*esp. of an hour*)

و /V/

وَ، و	conj.	/væ/, /o/	and
واحِد	n.	/vahed/	credit unit
وارد شُدَن	v.	/vared šod-æn/	to enter
وِب سایت	n.	/veb sayt/	website
وَرزِش	n.	/værzeš/	sport, physical exercise
وَزن	n.	/væzn/	weight
وَسیع	adj.	/væsi'/	vast
وَقتی	conj.	/væqti/	when
وَلی	conj.	/væli/	but
ویدیو	n.	/vidiyo/	video

ه /H/

هال	n.	/hal/	hall, living room
هُتِل	n.	/hotel/	hotel
هِجدَه	num.	/hejdæh/	eighteen
هِزار	num.	/hezar/	thousand
هَر	art.	/hær/	each, every
هَزینه	n.	/hæzine/	cost
هَشت	num.	/hæšt/	eight

هَشتاد	num.	/hæštad/	eighty
هَشتصَد	num.	/hæšt-sæd/	eight hundred
هَفت	num.	/hæft/	seven
هَفتاد	num.	/hæftad/	seventy
هَفتصَد	num.	/hæft-sæd/	seven hundred
هَفته	n.	/hæfte/	week
هِفدَه	num.	/hefdæh/	seventeen
هُلَند	n.	/holænd/	Holland
هَم	adv.	/hæm/	too, also
هَمسَر	n.	/hæmsær/	spouse
هَمه	art., pro.	/hæme/	all
هَميشه	adv.	/hæmiše/	always
هَمينطور	n.	/hæmin-tor/	the same
هِند	n.	/hend/	India
هِندِسه	n.	/hendese/	geometry
هُنَر	n.	/honær/	art
هُنَرجو	n.	/honær-ju/	art student
هُنَرمَند	n.	/honar-mænd/	artist
هِنگام	n.	/hengam/	during, at the time of
هَوا	n.	/hæva/	air
هَواپيما	n.	/hæva-peyma/	airplane
هَوايی	adj.	/hæva-yi/	air (*adj.*)
هيچوَقت	adv.	/hič-væqt/	never

ی ۱۷۱

ياد دادَن	v.	/yad dad-æn/	to teach
ياد گِرفتَن	v.	/yad gereft-æn/	to learn
يازدَه	num.	/yazdæh/	eleven
يک	num.	/yek/	one
يکديگَر	pro.	/yek-digær/	each other, one another

یکشنبه	n.	/yek-šænbe/	Sunday
یکصد	num.	/yek-sæd/	one hundred
یکهزار	num.	/yek-hezar/	one thousand

Glossary

English–Farsi Glossary

- An irregular present stem of a verb is given in parentheses after the infinitive form of the verb.
- An irregular plural form of a noun is given in parentheses after the singular form of the noun.
- Alternative pronunciations of the same word are separated by a comma and appear within a single set of forward slashes. The formal pronunciation precedes the informal pronunciation.

A

abdomen	شِکَم	/šekæm/	n.
accept (to)	پَذیرُفتَن (پَذیر)	/pæzir-oft-æn/ (/pæzir/)	v.
accommodation	مَحَلِّ اِقامَت	/mæhæll-e eqamæt/	n.
account	حِساب	/hesab/	n.
accountant	حِسابدار	/hesab-dar/	n.
ache	دَرد	/dærd/	n.
addition	اِضافه	/ezafe/	n.
address	آدرس، نِشانی	/adres/, /nešan-i/	n.
advice	راهنمایی	/rahnæma-yi/	n.
a few of	چَند تا از	/čænd ta æz/	art.
affairs	اُمور	/omur/	n.
after	بَعد از	/bæ'd æz/	p.

یکشنبه	n.	/yek-šænbe/	Sunday
یکصَد	num.	/yek-sæd/	one hundred
یکهِزار	num.	/yek-hezar/	one thousand

Glossary

English–Farsi Glossary

- An irregular present stem of a verb is given in parentheses after the infinitive form of the verb.
- An irregular plural form of a noun is given in parentheses after the singular form of the noun.
- Alternative pronunciations of the same word are separated by a comma and appear within a single set of forward slashes. The formal pronunciation precedes the informal pronunciation.

A

abdomen	شِکَم	/šekæm/	n.
accept (to)	پَذیرُفتَن (پَذیر)	/pæzir-oft-æn/ (/pæzir/)	v.
accommodation	مَحَلِّ اِقامَت	/mæhæll-e eqamæt/	n.
account	حِساب	/hesab/	n.
accountant	حِسابدار	/hesab-dar/	n.
ache	دَرد	/dærd/	n.
addition	اِضافه	/ezafe/	n.
address	آدرس، نِشانی	/adres/, /nešan-i/	n.
advice	راهنمایی	/rahnæma-yi/	n.
a few of	چَند تا از	/čænd ta æz/	art.
affairs	اُمور	/omur/	n.
after	بَعد از	/bæ'd æz/	p.

After you.	بفرمایید، برفرمایین.	/befærmayid, befærmayin./	idiom
again adv.	دوباره	/dobare/	
agency	آژانس	/ažans/	n.
agent	مَسؤول / مَسئول	/mæs'ul/	n.
air	هَوا	/hæva/	n.
air	هَوایی	/hæva-yi/	adj.
airline	خَطِّ هَوایی	/xætt-e hæva-yi/	n.
airmail	پُستِ هوایی	/post-e hæva-yi/	n.
airplane	هَواپیما	/hæva-peyma/	n.
algebra	جَبر	/jæbr/	n.
a little	کَمی	/kæm-i/	adv.
all	همه	/hæme/	art., pro.
allow (to)	اجازه دادَن	/ejaze dad-æn/	v.
all right	بسیار خوب	/besiyar xob/	inter.
a lot	خیلی	/xeyli/	adj., adv.
also	هَم	/hæm/	adv.
always	هَمیشه	/hæmiše/	adv.
America	آمریکا	/amrika/	n.
and	وَ، و	/væ/, /o/	conj.
ankle	مچِ پا	/moč-e pa/	n.
answer (to)	جَواب دادَن	/jævab dad-æn/	v.
apartment	آپارتِمان	/aparteman/	n.
applaud (to)	تَشویق کَردَن	/tæšviq kærd-æn/	v.
applicant (applicants)	مُتَقاضی (مُتَقاضیان)	/motæqazi/ (/motæqazi-an/)	n.
application	دَرخواست	/dær-xast/	n.
apply (to/for)	دَرخواست کَردَن	/dær xast kærd-æn/	v.
archive	بایگانی	/baygani/	n.
arm	بازو	/bazu/	n.

art	هُنَر	/honær/	n.
article	مَقاله	/mæqale/	n.
artist	هُنَرمَند	/honar-mænd/	n.
art student	هُنَرجو	/honær-ju/	n.
as	به عُنوانِ	/be onvan-e/	p.
ask (to)	پُرسیدَن	/pors-id-æn/	v.
assistant	مُعاون	/mo'aven/	n.
at	سَرِ	/sær-e/	p.
at all	اَصلاً	/æslæn/	adv.
at the time of	هِنگام	/hengam/	n.
aunt (father's sister)	عَمه	/'æmme/	n.
aunt (mother's sister)	خاله	/xale/	n.

B

bachelor's degree	لیسانس، کارشِناسی	/lisans/, /karšenasi/	n.
back	عقب	/'aqæb/	n.
back	پُشت	/pošt/	p.
backache (lower)	کَمَر دَرد	/kæmær dærd/	n.
bag	کیف	/kif/	n.
ballot	رَأی	/ræ'y/	n.
ballot box	صَندوقِ رَأی	/sænduq-e ræ'y/	n.
bank	بانک	/bank/	n.
bank clerk/teller	کارمَندِ بانک	/kar-mænd-e bank/	n.
banknote	اِسکِناس	/eskenas/	n.
bathroom	حمام	/hæmmam/	n.
bazaar	بازار	/bazar/	n.
be (to)	بودَن (هَست، است)	/bud-æn/ (/hæst, æst/)	v.
be able to (to)	تَوانِستَن (تَوان)	/tævan-est-æn/ (/tævan/)	v.
beat (to)	زَدَن (زَن)	/zæd-æn/ (/zæn/)	v.

beautiful	زیبا	/ziba/	adj.
because	چون	/čon/	conj.
become (to)	شُدَن (شو)	/šod-æn/ (/šo/)	v.
bed	تَخت، تَختِ خواب	/tæxt/, /tæxt-e xab/	n.
bedroom	اتاق خواب	/otaq xab/	n.
be fond of (to)	عَلاقه داشتَن	/ælaqe dašt-æn/	v.
before	پیش از، قَبل از	/piš æz/, /qæbl æz/	p.
begin (to)	شُروع شُدَن	/šoru' šod-æn/	v.
behind	پُشت	/pošt/	p.
be in order (to)	دُرُست بودَن	/dorost bud-æn/	v.
be interested in (to)	عَلاقه داشتَن	/ælaqe dašt-æn/	v.
be in working condition (to)	دُرُست بودَن	/dorost bud-æn/	v.
be late (to)	دیر کَردَن	/dir kærd-æn/	v.
below	زیرِ	/zir-e/	p.
be out of order (to)	خَراب بودَن	/xærab bud-æn/	v.
beside	کِنارِ	/kenar-e/	p.
big	بُزُرگ	/bozorg/	adj.
bill	صورَت حِساب	/suræt hesab/	n.
bills (large)	پولِ دُرُشت	/pul-e došt/	n.
bills (small)	پولِ خُرد	/pul-e xord/	n.
binder	کِلاسور	/kelasor/	n.
biologist	زیست شناس	/zist šenas/	n.
biology	زیست شناسی	/zist šenasi/	n.
black	سیاه	/siyah/	adj.
blackboard	تَخته سیاه	/taxte siyah/	n.
blanket	پَتو	/pætu/	n.
blouse	بلوز	/boluz/	n.
blue	آبی	/abi/	adj.
body	بَدَن، تَن	/bædæn/, /tæn/	n.
boot	پوتین	/putin/	n.

Bosnia	بوسنی	/bosni/	n.
boss	رَئیس	/ræ'is/	n.
boutique	بوتیک	/butik/	n.
box	صَندوق	/sænduq/	n.
boy	پِسَر	/pesær/	n.
bra	سوتیَن	/sutiyæn/	n.
breakfast	صُبحانه	/sobhane/	n.
breast	سینه	/sine/	n.
bridge	پُل	/pol/	n.
briefcase	کیف	/kif/	n.
broad bean	باقِلا	/baqela/	n.
brother	بَرادَر	/bæradær/	n.
brown	قَهوه ای	/qæhve-'i/	adj.
brush (one's teeth) (to)	مِسواک کردن، مِسواک زَدَن	/mesvak kærd-æn/, /mesvak zæd-æn/	v.
building	ساختِمان	/saxteman/	n.
burn (to)	سوختَن (سوز)	/suxt-æn/ (/suz/)	v.
bus	اُتوبوس	/otobus/	n.
bush	بوته	/bute/	n.
busy	شُلوغ	/šoluq/	adj.
but	وَلی	/væli/	conj.
buttocks	باسَن	/basæn/	n.
buy (to)	خَریدَن	/xær-id-æn/	v.
by (in passive sentences)	تَوَسُطِ	/tævæssot-e/	p.
by the way	راستی	/rast-i/	inter.

C

call (to)	نامیدَن	/nam-id-æn/	v.
calm	آرام، آروم	/aram, arum/	adj.
calmness	آرامِش	/aram-eš/	n.
can	تَوانِستَن (تَوان)	/tævan-est-æn/ (/tævan/)	v.

Canada	کانادا	/kanada/	n.
candidate	کاندیدا، نامزَد	/kandida/, /nam-zæd/	n.
cap	کُلاه	/kolah/	n.
car	ماشین	/mašin/	n.
card	کارت	/kart/	n.
care	دِقَّت	/deqqæt/	n.
carpet	فَرش	/færš/	n.
celebration	جَشن	/jæšn/	n.
certainly	حَتماً	/hætmæn/	adv.
chair	صَندَلی	/sændæli/	n.
check	چِک	/ček/	n.
checkbook	دَسته چِک	/dæste ček/	n.
checking account	حِسابِ جاری	/hesab-e jari/	n.
chemistry	شیمی	/šimi/	n.
chest	سینه	/sine/	n.
chest (container)	صَندوق	/sænduq/	n.
chicken	مُرغ	/morq/	n.
chief	رَئیس	/ræ'is/	n.
child	بَچّه، کودَک	/bæčče/, /kudæk/	n.
children's clothes	لِباسِ بَچّه گانه	/lebas-e bæčče-gane/	n.
China	چین	/čin/	n.
cinema	سینَما	/sinæma, sinema/	n.
circle	مِیدان	/meydan/	n.
city	شَهر	/šæhr/	n.
class	کِلاس	/kelas/	n.
clerk	کارمَند	/kar-mænd/	n.
client	مُشتَری	/moštæri/	n.
climb down (to)	پایین رَفتَن	/payin ræft-æn/	v.
clock	ساعَت	/sa'æt/	n.
clothes	لِباس	/lebas/	n.

clothes store	لِباس فُروشی	/lebas foruš-i/	n.
coat	کُت	/kot/	n.
coin	سِکّه	/sekke/	n.
coins	پولِ خُرد	/pul-e xord/	n.
cold	سَرد	/særd/	adj.
collection	مَجموعه	/mæjmu'e/	n.
college	دانِشکَده	/daneš-kæde/	n.
color	رَنگ	/ræng/	n.
come (to)	آمَدَن (آ)	/amæd-æn/ (/a/)	v.
common cold	سَرما خوردِگی	/særma xord-egi/	n.
company	شِرکت	/šerkæt/	n.
computer	رایانه، کامپیوتِر	/rayane/, /kampiyuter/	n.
concert	کُنسِرت	/konsert/	n.
conductor (orchestra)	رَهبَرِ اُرکِستر	/ræh-bær-e orkestr/	n.
Congo	کُنگو	/kongo/	n.
continue (to)	اِدامه دادَن	/edame dad-æn/	v.
cook	آشپَز	/aš-pæz/	n.
cook (to)	پُختَن (پَز)	/poxt-æn/ (/pæz/)	v.
cooking	آشپَزی	/aš-pæz-i/	n.
cooking pot	قابلَمه	/qablæme/, /qableme/	n.
cool	خُنَک	/xonæk/	adj.
coppersmith	مِسگَر	/mes-gær/	n.
corridor	راهرو	/rahro/	n.
cost	هَزینه	/hæzine/	n.
cough (to)	سُرفه کَردَن	/sorfe kærd-æn/	v.
count (to)	شِمُردَن	/šemord-æn/	v.
country	کِشوَر	/kešvær/	n.
course	دَرس	/dærs/	n.
cousin (father's brother's daughter)	دختر عمو	/doxtær 'æmu/	n.

cousin (father's brother's son)	پسر عمو	/pesær 'æmu/	n.
cousin (father's sister's daughter)	دختر عمه	/doxtær 'æmme/	n.
cousin (father's sister's son)	پسر عمه	/pesær 'æmme/	n.
cousin (mother's brother's daughter)	دختر دایی	/doxtær dayi/	n.
cousin (mother's brother's son)	پسر دایی	/pesær dayi/	n.
cousin (mother's sister's daughter)	دختر خاله	/doxtær xale/	n.
cousin (mother's sister's son)	پسرخاله	/pesær xale/	n.
credit unit	واحِد	/vahed/	n.
crowded	شُلوغ	/šoluq/	adj.
cul-de-sac	بُن بَست	/bon-bæst/	n.
cup	فِنجان، فنجون	/fenjan, fenjun/	n.
curve	پیچ	/pič/	n.
customer	مُشتَری	/moštæri/	n.

D

dark	تاریک	/tarik/	adj.
darling	جان، جون	/jan, jun/	n.
date	تاریخ	/tarix/	n.
daughter	دُختر	/doxtær/	n.
day	روز	/ruz/	n.
day after tomorrow	پَس فَردا	/pæs færda/	adv.
deaf	ناشِنَوا	/na-šen-æva/	adj.
dear	عَزیز	/'æziz/	adj.
decide (to)	تَصمیم گِرفتَن	/tæsmim gereft-æn/	v.
decision	تَصمیم	/tæsmim/	n.
deep	عَمیق	/æmiq/	adj.

dentist	دندان پزشک	/dændan pezešk/	n.
department	بَخش	/bæxš/	n.
deputy	مُعاون	/mo'aven/	n.
desert	صَحرا	/sæhra/	n.
dew	شَبنَم	/šæbnæm/	n.
difficult	سَخت	/sæxt/	adj.
dill	شِوید	/ševid/	n.
dining room	سالنِ ناهار خوری، اتاقِ ناهارخوری	/salon-e nahar xori/, /otaq-e nahar xori/	n.
dining table	میزِ ناهارخوری	/miz-e nahar xori/	n.
dinner	شام	/šam/	n.
director	مُدیر	/modir/	n.
discount	تَخفیف	/tæxfif/	n.
dishwasher	ماشینِ ظرف شویی	/mašin-e zærf šuyi/	n.
do (to)	کَردَن (کُن)	/kærd-æn/ (/kon/)	v.
do a task/job (to)	اَنجام دادَن	/ænjam dad-æn/	v.
doctor	دُکتُر	/doktor/	n.
doctorate	دُکتُرا	/doktora/	n.
doctor's office	مَطَبِّ دُکتُر	/mætæbb-e doktor/	n.
domestic	داخِلی	/daxel-i/	adj.
door	دَر	/dær/	n.
downstairs	طبقه یِ پایین	/tæbæqe-ye payin/	n., adv.
draw (to)	کَشیدَن	/kæš-id-æn/	v.
drink	نوشیدَنی	/nuš-id-æni/	n.
drink (to)	نوشیدن	/nušid-æn/	v.
drink (to) (*colloq.*)	خوردَن (خور)	/xord-æn/ (/xor/)	v.
drive around (to)	گَردِش کَردَن	/gærdeš kærd-æn/	v.
dry	خُشک	/xošk/	adj.
dry (to)	خُشک کردَن	/xošk kærd-æn/	v.

during	هِنگام	/hengam/	n.

E

each	هَر	/hær/	art.
each other	یـکدیگَر	/yek-digær/	pro.
ear	گوش	/guš/	n.
earth	زَمین	/zæmin/	n.
east	مَشرِق	/mæšreq/	n.
easy	آسان، آسون	/asan, asun/	adj.
eat (to)	خوردَن (خور)	/xord-æn/ (/xor/)	v.
economic	اِقتِصادی	/eqtesad-i/	adj.
economy	اِقتِصاد	/eqtesad/	n.
eight	هَشت	/hæšt/	num.
eighteen	هِجدَه	/hejdæh/	num.
eighth month of the Persian calendar	آبان	/aban/	n.
eight hundred	هَشتصَد	/hæšt-sæd/	num.
eighty	هَشتاد	/hæštad/	num.
elbow	آرَنج	/arænj/	n.
elect (to)	اِنتِخاب کَردَن	/entexab kærd-æn/	v.
elections	اِنتِخابات	/entexabat/	n.
electricity	بَرق	/bærq/	n.
elementary	اِبتِدایی	/ebteda-yi/	adj.
eleven	یازدَه	/yazdæh/	num.
eleventh month of the Persian calendar	بَهمَن	/bæhmæn/	n.
e-mail	ایمیل، پُستِ اِلکتِرونیک	/imeyl/, /post-e elekteronik/	n.
e-mail (to)	ایمیل زَدَن	/imeyl zæd-æn/	v.
employ (to)	اِستِخدام کردن	/estexdam kærd-æn/	v.
employee	کارمَند	/kar-mænd/	n.

encourage (to)	تَشویق کَردَن	/tæšviq kærd-æn/	v.
end	آخَر، اِنتِها، پایان	/axær/, /enteha/, /payan/	n.
engineer	مُهَندِس	/mohændes/	n.
engineering	مُهَندِسی	/mohændesi/	n.
England	اِنگِلیس	/engelis/	n.
English	اِنگِلیسی	/engelis-i/	n., adj.
Enjoy your meal!	نوش ِ جان!	/nuš-e jan!/	idiom
enter (to)	وارد شُدَن	/vared šod-æn/	v.
entertaining room	سالن ِ پذیرایی	/salon-e pæzirayi/	n.
enthusiasm	اشتیاق	/eštiyaq/	n.
enthusiastic	مُشتاق	/moštaq/	adj.
enthusiastically	مُشتاقانه	/moštaq-ane/	adv.
envelope	پاکَتِ نامه	/pakæt-e name/	n.
essay	مَقاله	/mæqale/	n.
evening	عَصر	/'æsr/	n.
every	هَر	/hær/	art.
examine (to)	مُعایِنه کَردَن	/mo'ayene kærd-æn/	v.
excursion	گَردِش	/gærd-eš/	n.
excuse (to)	بَخشیدَن	/bæxš-id-æn/	v.
Excuse me.	ببخشید، ببخشین.	/bebæxšid, bebæxšin./	idiom
exercise (physical)	وَرزش	/værzeš/	n.
express	اِکسپِرِس	/eksperes/	n.
expressway	بُزُرگراه	/bozorg-rah/	n.
extra	اِضافه	/ezafe/	n.
eye	چَشم	/čæšm/	n.

F

face	صورَت	/suræt/	n.
fall	پاییز	/payiz/	n.

fall (to) (rain or snow)	باریدَن	/bar-id-æn/	v.
fall down (to)	زَمین خوردَن	/zæmin xord-æn/	v.
family	خانِواده	/xanevade/	n.
far	دور	/dur/	adj.
fare	کِرایه	/keraye/	n.
Farsi	فارسی	/fars-i/	n.
Farsi language and literature	زَبان و اَدَبیات فارسی	/zæban o ædæbiyat-e fars-i/	n.
father	پِدَر	/pedær/	n.
father-in-law (husband's father)	پِدَر شوهر	/pedær šohær/	n.
father-in-law (wife's father)	پِدَر زن	/pedær zæn/	n.
fax	فَکس، نَمابَر	/fæks/, /næma-bær/	n.
fesenjan (meat dish)	خورش ِ فِسِنجان	/xoreš-e fesenjan/	n.
fever	تَب	/tæb/	n.
fiancé(e)	نامزَد	/nam-zæd/	n.
field	دَشت	/dæšt/	n.
field of study	رِشته	/rešte/	n.
fifteen	پانزدَه	/panzdæh/	num.
fifth month of the Persian calendar	مُرداد	/mordad/	n.
fifty	پَنجاه	/pænjah/	num.
file	پَروَنده	/pærvænde/	n.
fill (to)	پُر کَردَن	/por kærd-æn/	v.
film	فیلم	/film/	n.
finger	اَنگُشت	/ængošt/	n.
fire (to)	اِخراج کردن	/exraj kærd-æn/	v.
first	اَوَّل، اَوَّلین	/ævval/, /ævvalin/	num.
first month of the Persian calendar	فَروَردین	/færværdin/	n.
fish	ماهی	/mahi/	n.
five	پَنج	/pænj/	num.

five hundred	پانصَد	/pan-sæd/	num.
fix (to)	دُرُست کَردَن	/dorost kærd-æn/	v.
flight	پَرواز	/pærvaz/	n.
flower	گُل	/gol/	n.
flowerpot	گُلدان	/gol-dan/	n.
flower shop	گُل فُروشی	/gol foruš-i/	n.
fluid (fluids)	مایِع (مایِعات)	/maye'/ (/maye'at/)	n.
fly (to)	پَرواز کَردَن	/pærvaz kærd-æn/	v.
folder	پوشه	/puše/	n.
food	غَذا	/qæza/	n.
foot	پا	/pa/	n.
for	برایِ	/bæra-ye/	p.
forearm	ساعِد	/sa'ed/	n.
foreign	خارجی	/xarej-i/	adj.
forgive (to)	بَخشیدَن	/bæxš-id-æn/	v.
fork	چَنگال	/čængal/	n.
form	فُرم	/form/	n.
fortunately	خوشبَختانه	/xoš-bæxt-ane/	adv.
forty	چِهِل	/čehel/	num.
four	چَهار	/čæhar, čehar, čahar/	num.
four hundred	چَهارصَد	/čæhar-sæd/	num.
fourteen	چَهاردَه	/čæhardæh, čehardæh, čahardæh/	num.
fourth month of the Persian calendar	تیر	/tir/	n.
France	فَرانسه	/færanse/	n.
fresh	تازه	/taze/	adj.
Friday	جُمعه	/jom'e/	n.
friend	دوست	/dust/	n.
friendliness	صَمیمیَّت	/sæmimi-yyæt/	n.
friendly	صَمیمی	/sæmimi/	adj.

from	از	/æz/	p.
fruit	میوه	/mive/	n.
fruit juice	آبِ میوه	/ab-e mive/	n.
full	پُر	/por/	adj.
furniture	لوازمِ منزل، اثاثِ منزل، اثاثِ خانه	/lævazem-e mænzel/, /æsas-e mænzel/, /æsas-e xane/	n.
future	آیَنده	/ayænde/	n.

G

gallery	گالِری	/galeri/	n.
gas	گاز	/gaz/	n.
geography	جُغرافیا، جُغرافی	/joqrafiya/, /joqrafi/	n.
geometry	هِندِسه	/hendese/	n.
get (to)	گِرفتَن (گیر)	/gereft-æn/ (/gir/)	v.
get a leave (to)	مُرخَصی گِرفتَن	/morxasi gereft-æn/	v.
get done (a task/job) (to)	اَنجام شُدَن	/ænjam šod-æn/	v.
get elected (to)	اِنتِخاب شُدَن	/entexab šod-æn/	v.
get employed (to)	اِستِخدام شدن	/estexdam šod-æn/	v.
get fired (to)	اِخراج شدن	/exraj šod-æn/	v.
get fixed (to)	دُرُست شُدَن	/dorost šod-æn/	v.
get interviewed (to)	مُصاحِبه شدن	/mosahebe šod-æn/	v.
get selected (to)	اِنتِخاب شُدَن	/entexab šod-æn/	v.
get solved (to)	بَر طَرَف شُدَن	/bær tæræf šod-æn/	v.
girl	دُختَر	/doxtær/	n.
give (to)	دادَن (دِه)	/dad-æn/ (/de/)	v.
glass	لیوان	/livan/	n.
go (to)	رَفتَن (رو)	/ræft-æn/ (/ro/)	v.

go away (to)	بَر طَرَف شُدَن	/bær tæræf šod-æn/	v.
go down (to)	پایین رَفتَن	/payin ræft-æn/	v.
go hiking (to)	کوه نَوَردی کَردَن	/kuh næværd-i kærd-æn/	v.
go mountaineering (to)	کوه نَوَردی کَردَن	/kuh næværd-i kærd-æn/	v.
good	خوب	/xub/	adj.
Good-bye.	خُداحافِظ، خدافظ.	/xodahafez, xodafez./	inter.
go on leave (to)	به مُرخَصی رَفتَن، مُرخَصی رَفتَن	/be morxasi ræft-æn/, /morxasi ræft-æn/	v.
go on a picnic (to)	پیک نیک رَفتَن	/piknik ræft-æn/	v.
government	دولَت	/dolæt/	n.
grade school student	دانِش آموز	/daneš amuz/	n.
gram	گِرَم	/geræm/	n.
grand	بُزُرگ	/bozorg/	adj.
grandchild	نَوه	/næve/	n.
grandfather	پِدَر بزرگ	/pedær bozorg/	n.
grandmother	مادر بزرگ	/madær bozorg/	n.
grant a leave (to)	مُرخَصی دادَن	/morxasi dad-æn/	v.
grass	چَمَن	/čæmæn/	n.
grateful	مَمنون	/mæmnun/	adj.
gray	طوسی، خاکِستَری	/tusi/, /xakestær-i/	adj.
great	بُزُرگ	/bozorg/	adj.
green	سَبز	/sæbz/	adj.
ground	زَمین	/zæmin/	n.
ground mail	پُستِ زَمینی	/post-e zæmin-i/	n.
grow (to) (plant)	روییدَن	/ruy-id-æn/	v.
guidance	راهنمایی	/rahnæma-yi/	n.

H

hair	مو	/mu/	n.

half (*esp.* of an hour)	نیم	/nim/	n.
hall	تالار، هال	/talar/, /hal/	n.
hand	دَست	/dæst/	n.
handwriting	خَط	/xætt/	n.
happy	خوشحال	/xoš-hal/	adj.
hard	سَخت	/sæxt/	adj.
hastily	عَجولانه	/æjul-ane/	adv.
hat	کُلاه	/kolah/	n.
have (to)	داشتَن (دار)	/dašt-æn/ (/dar/)	v.
have breakfast (to)	صبحانه خوردن	/sobhane xord-æn/	v.
have dinner (to)	شام خوردن	/šam xord æn/	v.
he	آن، او	/an/, /u/	pro.
he (*fml.*)	ایشان، ایشون	/išan, isun/	pro.
head	سَر، رَئیس	/sær/, /ræ'is/	n.
headache	سَر دَرد	/sær dærd/	n.
hear (to)	شِنیدَن	/šenid-æn/	v.
heavy	سَنگین	/sængin/	adj.
heel	پاشنه ی پا	/pašne-ye pa/	n.
hello	سَلام	/sælam/	inter.
hello (telephone)	اَلو	/ælo/	inter.
hen	مُرغ	/morq/	n.
here	اینجا	/inja/	adv.
Here you are.	بفرمایید، برفرمایین.	/befærmayid, befærmayin./	idiom
herself	خودَش	/xod-æš/	pro.
herself (*fml.*)	خودِشان، خودشون	/xod-ešan, xod-ešun/	pro.
high school	دَبیرستان	/dæbirestan/	n.
hiker	کوه نَوَرد	/kuh næværd/	n.
hiking	کوه نَوَردی	/kuh næværd-i/	n.
hill	تَپّه	/tæppe/	n.
himself	خودَش	/xod-æš/	pro.

himself (*fml.*)	خودِشان، خودشون	/xod-ešan, xod-ešun/	pro.
history	تاریخ	/tarix/	n.
hit (to)	زَدَن (زَن)	/zæd-æn/ (/zæn/)	v.
hold (to)	نِگَهداری کَردَن	/negæh-dar-i kærd-æn/	v.
holiday (holidays)	تَعطیل (تَعطیلات)	/tæ'til/ (/tæ'til-at/)	n.
Holland	هُلَند	/holænd/	n.
home	خانه، مَنزل	/xane/, /mænzel/	n.
homemaker	خانه دار	/xane-dar/	n.
hope	اُمید	/omid/	n.
hopeful	اُمیدوار	/omid-var/	adj.
hospital	بیمارستان	/bimar-estan/	n.
hot	داغ	/daq/	adj.
hotel	هُتِل	/hotel/	n.
house	خانه	/xane/	n.
how	چِطور	/četor/	adv.
How about you?	شُما چِطور؟	/šoma četor?/	idiom
How do you do?	خوشوَقتَم؟	/xoš-væqt-æm?/	idiom
how many	چَند تا	/čænd ta/	n.
humanities	عُلومِ اِنسانی	/olum-e ensani/	n.
hundred	صَد	/sæd/	num.
hurt (to)	دَرد کَردَن	/dærd kærd-æn/	v.
husband	شوهر	/šohær/	n.

I

I	مَن	/mæn/	pro.
I didn't get it.	متوجه نشدم.	/motevajjeh næšodam./	idiom
I don't know.	مَن خَبَر نَدارَم.	/mæn xæbær næ-dar-æm./	idiom
if	اَگَر، اَگه	/ægær, æge/	adv.

I have no idea.	مَن خبَر نَدارَم.	/mæn xæbær næ-dar-æm./	idiom
in	دَر، تو	/dær/, /tu/	p.
in a friendly manner	صَميمانه	/sæmim-ane/	adv.
include (to)	شامِل بودَن	/šamel bud-æn/	v.
India	هِند	/hend/	n.
in front of	روبروی	/ru-be-ru-ye/	p.
injured	زَخمی	/zæxm-i/	adj.
inside	تو، داخِل	/tu/, /daxel/	p.
insurance	بیمه	/bime/	n.
interested	عَلاقه مَند	/ælaqe-mænd/	adj.
international	خارجی، بین المِلَلی	/xarej-i/, /beyn-ol-melæl-i/	adj.
internet	اینترِنِت	/internet/	n.
intersection	چهارراه	/čæhar-rah/	n.
interview (to)	مُصاحِبه کردن	/mosahebe kærd-æn/	v.
Iran	ایران، ایرون	/iran, irun/	n.
Iranian	ایرانی، ایرونی	/irani, iruni/	n., adj.
Iraq	عِراق	/eraq, 'æraq/	n.
it	آن، او	/an/, /u/	pro.
Italy	ایتالیا	/italiya/	n.
itself	خودَش	/xod-æš/	pro.

J

jacket	کاپشِن	/kapšen/	n.
Japan	ژاپُن	/žapon/	n.
job	کار	/kar/	n.
jump (to)	پَریدَن	/pær-id-æn/	v.
just	دُرُست	/dorost/	adj.

K

keep (to)	نِگَـهداری کَردَن	/negæh-dar-i kærd-æn/	v.
kilogram	کیلو	/kilu/	n.
kiosk	دَکّه، کیوسک	/dække/, /kiyusk/	n.
kitchen	آشپزخانه	/ašpæz-xane/	n.
kitchen cabinet	کابینتِ آشپزخانه	/kabinet-e ašpæz xane/	n.
knee	زانو	/zanu/	n.
knife	چاقو، کارد	/čaqu/, /kard/	n.
know (to)	دانِستَـن (دان)	/danest-æn/ (/dan/)	v.
knowledge	دانِش	/daneš/	n.

L

laborer	کارگَر	/kar-gær/	n.
lady	خانم، خانوم	/xanom, xanum/	n.
lamp	چِراغ	/čeraq/	n.
land	زَمین	/zæmin/	n.
lane	کوچه	/kuče/	n.
language	زَبان	/zæban/	n.
large	بُزُرگ	/bozorg/	adj.
last	پیش	/piš/	adj.
last (to)	طول کِشیدَن	/tul keš-id-æn/	v.
last night	دیشَب	/di-šæb/	adv.
law (laws)	قانون، قَوانین	/qanun/, /qævanin/	n.
lawn	چَمَن	/čæmæn/	n.
leader	رَهبَر	/ræh-bær/	n.
learn (to)	یاد گِرفتَن	/yad gereft-æn/	v.
leave of absence	مُرخَصی	/morxæs-i/	n.
leg	پا	/pa/	n.
lesson	دَرس	/dærs/	n.

let (to)	اجازه دادَن	/ejaze dad-æn/	v.
letter	نامه	/name/	n.
level	سَطح	/sæth/	n.
librarian	کِتابدار	/ketab-dar/	n.
library	کِتابخانه	/ketab-xane/	n.
lie down (to)	دِراز کَشیدَن	/deraz kæš-id-æn/	v.
light	چِراغ	/čeraq/	n.
like (to)	دوست داشتَن	/dust dašt-æn/	v.
line	صَف، خَط	/sæf/, /xætt/	n.
listen (to)	گوش دادَن/کَردَن	/guš dad-æn/, /guš kærd-æn/	v.
literature	اَدَبیّات	/ædæbiyat/	n.
little	کَم	/kæm/	adj.
living room	هال	/hal/	n.
local	داخِلی	/daxel-i/	adj.
look (to)	نِگاه کَردَن	/negah kærd-æn/	v.
lunch	ناهار	/nahar/	n.

M

machine	دَستگاه ماشین	/dæst-gah/, /mašin/	n.
magazine (magazines)	مَجَلّه (مَجَلّه ها، مَجَلات)	/mæjælle/ (/majalle-ha, mæjallat/)	n.
mail	پُست	/post/	n.
mail (to)	پُست کَردَن	/post kærd-æn/	v.
mailbox	صَندوقِ پُست	/sænduq-e post/	n.
major	رشته	/rešte/	n.
make a phone call (to)	تِلِفُن کَردَن، تِلِفُن زَدَن	/telefon kærd-æn/, /telefon zæd-æn/	v.
Malaysia	مالِزی	/malezi/	n.
mall	پاساژ	/pasaž/	n.
man	مَرد	/mærd/	n.
managing director	مُدیر عامِل	/modir amel/	n.

manteau (women's long overall)	مانتو	/manto/	n.
manufacture (to)	تولید کَردَن	/tolid kærd-æn/	v.
manufacturer	تولید کُنَنده	/tolid kon-ænde/	n.
market	بازار	/bazar/	n.
master's degree	فوقِ لیسانس، کارشِناسیِ اَرشَد	/foq-e lisans/, /karšenasi-ye æršæd/	n.
match	مُسابِقه	/mosabeqe/	n.
material (materials)	مادِّه (موادّ)	/madde/ (/mævadd/)	n.
math	ریاضی	/riyazi/	n.
mathematics	ریاضیات	/riyaziyat/	n.
mattress	تُشَک	/tošæk/	n.
may	شایَد	/šayæd/	aux.
maybe	شایَد	/šayæd/	aux.
mayor	شَهردار	/šæhr-dar/	n.
meadow	چَمَنزار	/čæmæn-zar/	n.
meat	گوشت	/gušt/	n.
meat sauce	خورِش	/xoreš/	n.
media	رَسانه ها	/ræsan-e-ha/	n.
medicine	دارو	/daru/	n.
medium	متِوَسِّط، رَسانه	/motevæsset/, /ræsan-e/	adj.
meeting	جَلَسه	/jælæse/	n.
men's clothes	لِباسِ مَردانه	/lebas-e mærd-ane/	n.
mention (to)	حَرفِ چیزی را زَدَن	/hærf-e čiz-i ra zæd-æn/	v.
message	پَیام	/pæyam/	n.
meticulousness	دِقَّت	/deqqæt/	n.
Me, too.	مَن هَم همینطور.	/mæn hæm hæmin-tor./	idiom
Mexico	مِکزیک	/mekzik/	n.

minute	دَقیقه	/dæqiqe/	n.
mirror	آینه	/ayene/	n.
mister	آقا	/aqa/	n.
Monday	دوشَنبه	/do-šænbe/	n.
money	پول	/pul/	n.
month	ماه	/mah/	n.
moon	ماه	/mah/	n.
morning	صُبح	/sobh/	n.
mother	مادَر	/madær/	n.
mother-in-law (husband's mother)	مادر شوهر	/madær šohær/	n.
mother-in-law (wife's mother)	مادر زن	/madær zæn/	n.
mountain	کوه	/kuh/	n.
mountaineer	کوه نَوَرد	/kuh næværd/	n.
mountaineering	کوه نَوَردی	/kuh næværd-i/	n.
mouth	دَهان، دهن	/dæhan, dæhæn/	n.
movie	فیلم	/film/	n.
movies	سینَما	/sinæma, sinema/	n.
Mr.	آقای	/aqa-ye/	adj.
Mrs.	خانم، خانوم	/xanom, xanum/	n.
Ms.	خانم، خانوم	/xanom, xanum/	n.
museum	موزه	/muze/	n.
music	موسیقی	/musiqi/	n.
must	باید	/bayæd/	aux.
myself	خودَم	/xod-æm/	pro.

N

name	اسم	/esm/	n.
name (to)	نامیدَن	/nam-id-æn/	v.
napkin	دَستمال	/dæst-mal/	n.
natural sciences	عُلومِ طَبیعی	/olum-e tabi'i/	n.

near	نـزدیک	/næzdik/	adj., p.
necessary	لازم	/lazem/	adj.
needy	نیازمَند	/niyaz-mænd/	adj.
nephew (brother's child)	برادر زاده	/bæradær zade/	n.
nephew (sister's child)	خواهر زاده	/xahær zade/	n.
never	هیچوَقت	/hič-væqt/	adv.
new	جَدید، نو	/jædid/, /no/	adj.
news	اَخبار	/æxbar/	n.
newspaper	روزنامه	/ruzname/	n.
next	آیَنده، بَعد	/ayænde/, /bæ'd/	n.
niece (brother's child)	برادر زاده	/bæradær zade/	n.
niece (sister's child)	خواهر زاده	/xahær zade/	n.
night	شَب	/šæb/	n.
nine	نُـه	/noh/	num.
nine hundred	نُـهصَد	/noh-sæd/	num.
nineteen	نوزدَه	/nuzdæh/	num.
ninety	نـوَد	/nævæd/	num.
ninth month of the persian calendar	آذر	/azær/	n.
no	نَـه	/næ/	inter.
no (*fml.*)	نَـخیر	/næ-xeyr/	inter.
noise	سَر و صِدا	/sær o seda/	n.
noisy	شُلوغ	/šoluq/	adj.
noon	ظُهر	/zohr/	n.
north	شُمال	/šomal/	n.
nose	بینی	/bini/	n.
not busy	خَلوَت	/xælvæt/	adj.
not crowded	خَلوَت	/xælvæt/	adj.
now	الآن	/æl'an/	adv.
number	شُماره، تِعداد	/šomare/, /te'dad/	n.
nurse	پَرَستار	/pæræstar/	n.

obvious	مَعلوم	/mæ'lum/	adj.
occasion	مُناسبَت	/monasebæt/	n.
occupation (occupations)	شُغل، مَشاغِل	/šoql/	n.
of	از	/æz/	p.
office	اِداره، دَفتَر	/edare/, /dæftær/	n.
official (officials)	مَقام (مَقامات)	/mæqam/ (/mæqam-at/)	n.
okay	خوب	/xob/	inter.
old	قدیمی، کُهنه	/qadimi/, /kohne/	adj.
on	رویِ	/ru-ye/	p.
one	یک	/yek/	num.
one another	یکدیگَر	/yek-digær/	pro.
one hundred	یکصَد	/yek-sæd/	num.
one thousand	یکهِزار	/yek-hezar/	num.
on foot	پیاده	/piyade/	adv.
only	فَقَط	/fæqæt/	adj., adv.
open (to)	باز کَردَن	/baz kærd-æn/	v.
open a checking account (to)	حِسابِ جاری باز کَردَن	/hesab-e jari baz kærd-æn/	v.
open an account (to)	حِساب باز کَردَن	/hesab baz kærd-æn/	v.
open a savings account (to)	حِسابِ پَس انداز باز کَردَن	/hesab-e pæs ændaz baz kard-æn/	v.
ophthalmologist	چَشم پزشک	/čæšm pezešk/	n.
opposite	روبروی مخالفِ	/ru-be-ru-yec/, /moxalef/	p.
orchestra	اُرکِستر	/orkestr/	n.
organization	سازمان	/sazeman/	n.
other	دیگَر، دیگه	/digær, dige/	adj.

ourselves	خودِمان، خودمون	/xod-eman, xod-emun/	pro.
outside	بیرونِ	/birun-e/	p.
over	بالایِ	/bala-ye/	p.
overpass	پُل	/pol/	n.

P

package	بسته	/bæst-e/	n.
pain	دَرد	/dærd/	n.
pain in the leg/foot	پا دَرد	/pa dærd/	n.
painter	نَقّاش	/næqqaš/	n.
painting	نَقّاشی	/næqqaši/	n.
Pakistan	پاکِستان	/pakestan/	n.
pants	شَلوار	/šælvar/	n.
Pardon me.	ببخشید، ببخشین.	/bebæxšid, bebæxšin./	idiom
park	پارک	/park/	n.
parliament	مَجلِس	/mæjles/	n.
part	بَخش	/bæxš/	n.
participate (to)	شِرکَت کَردَن	/šerkæt kærd-æn/	v.
pass (to)	گُذشتَن (گُذر)	/gozæšt-æn/ (/gozær/)	v.
passerby	رَهگُذر	/ræh-gozær/	n.
past	پیش	/piš/	adj.
past (tense)	گُذشته	/gozæšte/	adj.
path	مَسیر	/mæsir/	n.
patient	بیمار، مَریض	/bimar/, /mæriz/	n.
pay (to)	پَرداخت کَردَن، پول دادَن	/pærdaxt kærd-æn/, /pul dad-æn/	v.
peace	آرامِش	/aram-eš/	n.
pedestrian	عابِرِ پیاده	/aber-e piyade/	n.
people	مَردُم	/mærdom/	n.

percent	دَر صَد	/dær sæd/	n.
perhaps	شایَد	/šayæd/	aux.
Persian	فارسی	/farsi/	n.
Persian New Year	نوروز	/noruz/	n.
person	کَس، نَفَر	/kæs/, /næfær/	n.
Peru	پِرو	/peru/	n.
pharmacist	داروساز	/daru-saz/	n.
pharmacy	داروخانه	/daru-xane/	n.
photograph	عَکس	/æks/	n.
photograph (to)	عَکس گِرِفتَن	/æks gereft-æn/	v.
physical condition	حال جسمی	/hal e jesmi/	n.
physician	پِزِشک	/pezešk/	n.
physics	فیزیک	/fizik/	n.
pick up (to)	بَرداشتَن	/bær dašt-æn/	v.
picnic	پیک نیک	/piknik/	n.
picture	عَکس	/æks/	n.
pill	قُرص	/qors/	n.
pillow	بالش	/baleš/	n.
place	جا	/ja/	n.
plan	بَرنامه	/bærname/	n.
plate	بُشقاب	/bošqab/	n.
play	نَمایِشنامه	/næma-yeš-name/	n.
player (players) (music)	نَوازَنده (نَوازَندِگان)	/nævaz-ænde/ (/nævaz-ænde-gan/)	n.
plenty	پُر	/por/	adj.
P. O. Box	صَندوقِ پُستی	/sænduq-e post-i/	n.
possession	مال	/mal/	n.
possible	مُمکِن	/momken/	adj.
post	پُست	/post/	n.
postal code	کُدِ پُستی	/kod-e post-i/	n.
post office	پُست خانه	/post-xane/	n.

potter	کوزه گَر	/kuze-gær/	n.
prepared	آماده	/amade/	adj.
prescription	نُسخه	/nosxe/	n.
present (tense)	حال	/hal/	n.
presidency	ریاستَتِ جُمهوری	/riyasæt-e jomhuri/	n.
president (country)	رَئیسِ جُمهور	/ræ'is'e jomhur/	n.
pretty	قشنگ	/qæšæng/	adj.
pre-university	پیش دانِشگاهی	/piš danešgah-i/	adj., n.
price	قِیمَت	/qeymæt/	n.
principal	مُدیر	/modir/	n.
produce (to)	تولید کَردَن	/tolid kærd-æn/	v.
producer	تولید کُنَنده	/tolid kon-ænde/	n.
product (products)	مَحصول (مَحصولات)	/mahsul/ (/mahsulat/)	n.
professor	اُستاد	/ostad/	n.
program	بَرنامه	/bærname/	n.
province	اُستان	/ostan/	n.
pull (to)	کَشیدَن	/kæš-id-æn/	v.
put (to)	گُذاشتن (گُذار)	/gozašt-æn/ (/gozar/)	v.

Q

quantity	تِعداد	/te'dad/	n.
quarter (*esp.* of an hour)	رُبع	/rob'/	n.
question	سُؤال	/so'al/	n.
question particle (yes/no)	آیا	/aya/	adv.
queue	صَف	/sæf/	n.

R

radio	رادیو	/radiyo/	n.
rain	باران، بارون	/baran, barun/	n.

raincoat	بارانی، بارونی	/baran-i, barun-i/	n.
read (to)	خواندَن (خوان)	/xand-æn/ (/xan/)	v.
ready	آماده	/amade/	adj.
receipt	قَبض	/qæbz/	n.
receiver	گیرَنده	/gir-ænde/	n.
recently	تازگی	/taze-gi/	adv.
recognize (to)	شِناختَن (شِناس)	/šenaxt-æn/ (/šenas/)	v.
recommend (to)	پیشنَهاد کَردَن	/pišnæhad kærd-æn/	v.
recommendation	پیشنَهاد	/piš-næhad/	n.
red	قِرمِز	/qermez/	adj.
rent	کِرایه	/keraye/	n.
report	گُزارِش	/gozar-eš/	n.
reporter	خَبَرنِگار	/xæbær-negar/	n.
republic	جُمهوری	/jomhur-i/	n.
required	لازِم	/lazem/	adj.
reserve (to)	رزرو کَردَن	/rezerv kærd-æn/	v.
residence	مَنزِل، مَحَلِّ اِقامَت	/mænzel/, /mæhæll-e eqamæt/	n.
respect	اِحتِرام	/ehteram/	n.
rest (to)	اِستِراحَت کَردَن	/esterahæt kærd-æn/	v.
restaurant	رِستوران	/resturan/	n.
restroom	دستشویی	/dæstšuyi/	n.
result	نَتیجه	/nætije/	n.
review (to)	مُرور کَردَن	/morur kærd-æn/	v.
rice dish with beans	شِوید باقِلا	/ševid baqela/	n.
right (*adj.*)	دُرُست	/dorost/	adj.
rinse (to)	آب کِشیدَن	/ab keš-id-æn/	v.
river	رود، رودخانه	/rud/, /rud-xane/	n.
road	جادّه، راه	/jadde/, /rah/	n.

rock	سَنگ	/sæng/	n.
room	اُتاق	/otaq/	n.
roundabout	مِیدان	/meydan/	n.
rub (to)	مالیدَن	/mal-id-æn/	v.
rug	فَرش، قالی	/færš/, /qali/	n.
run (to)	دَویدَن	/dæv-id-æn/	v.

S

salad	سالاد	/salad/	n.
same	هَمینطور	/hæmin-tor/	n.
sandal	سَندَل	/sændæl/	n.
sandwich	ساندِویچ	/sandevič/	n.
Saturday	شَنبه	/šænbe/	n.
savings account	حِسابِ پَس انداز	/hesab-e pæs-ændaz/	n.
say (to)	گُفتَن (گو)	/goft-æn/ (/gu/)	v.
scarf (women's)	روسَری	/ru-sær-i/	n.
scholar	دانِشمَند	/daneš-mænd/	n.
scientist	دانِشمَند	/daneš-mænd/	n.
script	خَط	/xætt/	n.
search (to)	جُستَن (جو)	/jost-æn/ (/ju/)	v.
secluded	خَلوَت	/xælvæt/	adj.
second	دُوُم، دُوُمین	/dovvom/, /dovvomin/	num.
second month of the Persian calendar	اُردیبِهِشت	/ordibehešt/	n.
secretary	مُنشی	/monši/	n.
section	بَخش	/bæxš/	n.
see (to)	دیدَن (بین)	/did-æn/	v.
select (to)	اِنتِخاب کَردَن	/entexab kærd-æn/	v.
self	خود	/xod/	n.
semester	تِرم	/term/	n.

send (to)	فِرستادَن (فِرست)	/ferestad-æn/ (/ferest/)	v.
sender	فِرستَنده	/ferest-ænde/	n.
send regards (to)	سلام رساندن (رسان)	/sælam resandæn/ (/resan/)	v.
seven	هَفت	/hæft/	num.
seven hundred	هَفتصَد	/hæft-sæd/	num.
seventeen	هِفدَه	/hefdæh/	num.
seventh month of the Persian calendar	مِهر	/mehr/	n.
seventy	هَفتاد	/hæftad/	num.
several	چَندین	/čændin/	adj.
shave (to)	تَراشیدن	/tærašid-æn/	v.
she	آن، او	/an/, /u/	pro.
she (*fml.*)	ایشان، ایشون	/išan, isun/	pro.
sheet (linen)	مَلافه، مَلحَفه	/mælafe, mælhæfe/	n.
shin	ساقِ پا	/saq-e pa/	n.
ship	کَشتی	/kæšti/	n.
shirt	پیراهَن	/pirahæn/	n.
shoe	کَفش	/kæfš/	n.
shoe store	کَفّاشی	/kæffaš-i/	n.
shop	مَغازه	/mæqaze/	n.
shop (to)	خَرید کَردَن	/xær-id kærd-æn/	v.
shopkeeper	مَغازه دار	/mæqaze-dar/	n.
short	کوتاه	/kutah/	adj.
shorts	شورت	/šort/	n.
show (to)	نِشان دادَن	/nešan dad-æn/	v.
shower	دوش	/duš/	n.
sick person	بیمار، مَریض	/bimar/, /mæriz/	n.
side	طرف	/tæræf/	n.
side street	کوچه	/kuče/	n.
signature	اِمضاء	/emza'/	n.
since	از	/æz/	p.

sir	آقا	/aqa/	n.
sister	خواهَر	/xahær/	n.
six	شِش	/šeš/	num.
six hundred	شِشصَد	/šeš-sæd/	num.
sixteen	شانزدَه	/šanzdæh/	num.
sixth month of the Persian calendar	شَهریوَر	/šæhrivær/	n.
sixty	شَصت	/šæst/	num.
skirt	دامَن	/damæn/	n.
sleep (to)	خوابیدَن	/xabid-æn/	v.
slipper	دَمپایی	/dæm-pa-yi/	n.
small	کوچک	/kučæk/	adj.
sneeze (to)	عَطسه کَردَن	/ætse kærd-æn/	v.
snow	بَرف	/bærf/	n.
soccer	فوتبال	/futbal/	n.
social sciences	عُلومِ اِجتِماعی	/olum-e ejtema'i/	n.
sock	جوراب	/jurab/	n.
soft drink	نوشابه	/nuš-abe/	n.
sole (foot)	کَفِ پا	/kæf-e pa/	n.
some	کَمی	/kæm-i/	adv.
some of	قدری از	/qædri æz/	art.
someone	کَسی	/kæsi/	pro.
son	پِسَر	/pesær/	n.
soon	بزودی	/bezudi/	adv.
sore throat	گَلو دَرد	/gælu dærd/	n.
sound	صِدا	/seda/	n.
south	جُنوب	/jonub/, /jænub/	n.
Spain	اسپانیا	/espaniya/	n.
speak (to)	حَرف زَدَن	/hærf zæd-æn/	v.
special	خاصّ	/xass/	adj.
spectator	تَماشاگَر	/tæmaša-gær/	n.
spoon	قاشُق	/qašoq/	n.

sport	وَرزِش	/værzeš/	n.
spouse	هَمسَر	/hæmsær/	n.
spring	بَهار	/bæhar/	n.
stamp	تَمبر	/tæmbr/	n.
stand (to)	ایستادَن (ایست)	/ist-ad-æn/	v.
stay (to)	اِقامَت کَردَن	/eqamæt kærd -æn/	v.
stocking	جوراب	/jurab/	n.
stomach	شِکَم	/šekæm/	n.
stone	سَنگ	/sæng/	n.
store	فُروشگاه	/foruš-gah/	n.
stove	اُجاق	/ojaq/	n.
straight	مُستَقیم	/mostæqim/	adj., adv.
street	خیابان، خیابون	/xiyaban, xiyabun/	n.
street line	خَط کِشی	/xæt keši/	n.
stroll (to)	قَدَم زَدَن	/qædæm zæd-æn/	v.
success	مُوَفَقیَّت	/movæffæq-iyyæt/	n.
successful	مُوَفَّق	/movæffæq/	adj.
suggestion	پیشنَهاد	/piš-næhad/	n.
suit	کُت و شَلوار	/kot o šælvar/	n.
suitcase	چَمدان	/čæmedan/	n.
summer	تابِستان، تابستون	/tabestan, tabestun/	n.
Sunday	یکشَنبه	/yek-šænbe/	n.
surface	زَمینی	/zæmin-i/	adj.
sweet	شیرین	/širin/	adj., n.
swim (to)	شِنا کَردَن	/šena kærd-æn/	v.
swimming	شِنا	/šena/	n.
symphony	سَمفونی	/sæmfoni/	n.

T

table	میز	/miz/	n.
tablespoon	قاشُقِ غَذاخوری	/qašoq-e qæza-xor-i/	n.
take (a course) (to)	بَرداشتَن	/bær dašt-æn/	v.
take (time) (to)	طول کِشیدَن	/tul keš-id-æn/	v.
take (to)	گِرفتَن (گیر)، بُردَن (بَر)، مَصرَف کَردَن	/gereft-æn/ (/gir/), /bord-æn/ (/bær/), /mæsræf kærd-æn/	v.
take a bath (to)	حمام کردن/ گرفتن	/hæmmam kærd-æn, hæmmam gereft-æn/	v.
take a picture (to)	عَکس گِرفتَن	/æks gereft-æn/	v.
take a shortcut (to)	میان بُر زَدَن	/miyan bor zæd-æn/	v.
take a shower (to)	دوش گرفتن	/duš gereft æn/	v.
take a trip (to)	مُسافِرَت کَردَن/ رَفتَن	/mosaferæt kærdæn, mosaferæt ræftæn/	v.
take part (to)	شِرکَت کَردَن	/šerkæt kærd-æn/	v.
talk (to)	حَرفِ چیزی را زَدَن، صُحبَت کَردَن	/hærf-e čiz-i ra zæd-æn/, /sohbæt kærd-æn/	v.
tall	بُلند	/bolænd/	adj.
taxi	تاکسی	/taksi/	n.
tea	چای	/čay/	n.
teach (to)	یاد دادَن	/yad dad-æn/	v.
teacher	آموزگار، مُعَلِم	/amuz-gar/, /mo'ællem/	n.
teaspoon	قاشُقِ چایخوری	/qašoq-e čay-xor-i/	n.
Tehran	تِهران	/tehran/	n.
telephone	تِلِفُن	/telefon/	n.
television	تِلِویزیون	/televiziyun/	n.
ten	دَه	/dæh/	num.

tenth month of the Persian calendar	دِی	/dey/	n.
term	تِرم	/term/	n.
Thanks.	مِرسی، مَمنون.	/mersi./, /mæmnun./	inter.
Thank you.	دَستِ شُما دَرد نکِند/ نَـکُنه، مُتُشَکرَم.	/dæst-e šoma dærd nækon-æd nækon-e./, /motošækker-æm./	idiom
that	آن	/an/	art.
that (*conj.*)	که	/ke/	conj.
theater	تِئاتر	/te'atr/	n.
themselves	خودِشان، خودشون	/xod-ešan, xod-ešun/	pro.
then	بَعد	/bæ'd/	adj.
there	آنجا، اونجا	/anja, unja/	adv.
they	آنها	/anha/	pro.
thigh	رانِ پا	/ran-e pa/	n.
thing	چیز	/čiz/	n.
think (to)	فِکر کَردَن	/fekr kærd-æn/	v.
third	سِوُم، سِوُمین	/sevv-om/, /sevv-omin/	num.
third month of the Persian calendar	خُرداد	/xordad/	n.
thirteen	سیزدَه	/sizdæh/	num.
thirty	سی	/si/	num.
this	این	/in/	art.
thousand	هِزار	/hezar/	num.
three	سه	/se/	num.
three hundred	سیصَد	/si-sæd/	num.
throat	گَلو	/gælu/	n.
thumb	شَست	/šæst/	n.
Thursday	پنجشَنبه	/pænj-šænbe/	n.

ticket	بِلیت / بلیط	/belit/	n.
time	زَمان	/zæman/	n.
title	عُنوان	/onvan/	n.
to	به، تا	/be/, /ta/	p.
today	اِمروز	/emruz/	adv.
toe	انگُشتِ پا	/ængošt-e pa/	n.
toilet	توالت	/tovalet/	n.
tomorrow	فَردا	/færda/	adv.
tongue	زَبان	/zæban/	n.
too	هَم	/hæm/	adv.
tooth	دَندان، دندون	/dændan, dændun/	n.
toothbrush	مِسواک	/mesvak/	n.
tour	تور	/tur/	n.
tourist	توریست	/turist/	n.
traditional	سُنَّتی	/sonnæt-i/	adj.
traffic light	چراغِ راهنَمایی	/čeraq-e rah-næma-yi/	n.
train	قَطار	/qætar/	n.
travel	سَفَر، مُسافِرَت	/sæfær/, /mosaferæt/	n.
travel (to)	مُسافِرَت کَردَن، مُسافِرَت رَفتَن	/mosaferæt kærd-æn/, /mosaferæt ræftæn/	v.
traveler	مُسافِر	/mosafer/	n.
traveler's check	چِکِ مُسافِری	/ček-e mosafer-i/	n.
tree	دِرَخت	/deræxt/	n.
trigonometry	مُثَلَثات	/mosællæsat/	n.
trip	سَفَر، مُسافِرَت	/sæfær/, /mosaferæt/	n.
Tuesday	سه شَنبه	/se-šænbe/	n.
turn (to)	پیچیدَن	/pič-id-æn/	v.
twelfth month of the Persian calendar	اِسفَند	/esfænd/	n.

twelve	دوازدَه	/dævazdæh/	num.
twenty	بیست	/bist/	num.
two	دو	/do/	num.
two hundred	دویست	/devist/	num.

U

uncle (father's brother)	عَمو	/'æmu/	n.
uncle (mother's brother)	دایی	/dayi/	n.
under	زیرِ	/zir-e/	p.
underpass	زیرگذر	/zir-gozær/	n.
undershirt	زیرپیراهَنی	/zir-pirahæn-i/	n.
underwear	زیرپوش	/zir-puš/	n.
unfortunately	مُتِأسِّفانه	/mote'æssef-ane/	adv.
university	دانِشگاه	/daneš-gah/	n.
university student	دانِشجو	/daneš-ju/	n.
until	تا	/ta/	p.
upstairs	طبقه یِ بالا	/tæbæqe-ye bala/	n., adv.
urge (to)	تَشویق کَردَن	/tæšviq kærd-æn/	v.
use (to)	مَصرَف کَردَن	/mæsræf kærd-æn/	v.

V

vacation (vacations)	تَعطیل (تَعطیلات)	/tæ'til/ (/tæ'til-at/)	n.
valley	دَرّه	/dærre/	n.
vase	گُلدان	/gol-dan/	n.
vast	وَسیع	/væsi'/	adj.
vegetable (vegetables)	سبزی (سبزیجات)	/sæbz-i/ (/sæbz-i-jat/)	n.
vehicle	ماشین	/mašin/	n.
very	خیلی	/xeyli/	adj., adv.

very well	بسیار خوب	/besiyar xob/	inter.
video	ویدیو	/vidiyo/	n.
view	مَنظَره	/mænzære/	n.
village	روستا	/rusta/	n.
visit (to)	دیدَن کَردَن	/did-æn kærd-æn/	v.
voice	صِدا	/seda/	n.
vote	رَأی	/ræ'y/	n.
vote (to)	رَأی دادَن	/ræ'y dad-æn/	v.

W

waiting	مُنتظر	/montæzer/	adj.
wake up (to)	از خواب بُلند شُدن	/æz xab bolænd šod-æn/	v.
walk (to)	راه رَفتَن	/rah ræft-æn/	v.
walk around (to)	گَردِش کَردَن	/gærdeš kærd-æn/	v.
walnut	گِردو	/gerdu/	n.
want (to)	خواستَن (خواه)	/xast-æn/ (/xah/)	aux., v.
warm	گَرم	/gærm/	adj.
wash (to)	شُستَن (شوی)	/šost-æn/ (/šuy/)	v.
washing machine	ماشینِ لباس شویی	/mašin-e lebas šuyi/	n.
watch	ساعَت	/sa'æt/	n.
watch (to)	نِگاه کَردَن، تَماشا کَردَن	/negah kærd-æn/, /tæmaša kærd-æn/	v.
water	آب	/ab/	n.
way	راه	/rah/	n.
we	ما	/ma/	pro.
wear (to) (clothes)	پوشیدَن	/puš-id-æn/	v.
weave (to)	بافتَن (باف)	/baf-t-æn/ (/baf/)	v.
website	وب سایت	/veb sayt/	n.
Wednesday	چهارشَنبه	/čæhar-šænbe/	n.

week	هَفته	/hæfte/	n.
weekend	آخَرِ هَفته	/axær-e hæfte/	n.
weight	وَزن	/væzn/	n.
west	مَغرب	/mæqreb/	n.
what	چی، چه	/či, če/	pro.
when	کِی	/key/	adv.
when	وَقتی	/væqti/	conj.
where	کُجا	/koja/	adv.
which (in order)	چَندُمین	/čænd-om-in/	adj.
white	سِفید	/sefid/	adj.
who	چه کَسی، که، کی	/če kæsi/, /ke, ki/	pro.
why	چِرا	/čera/	adv.
wife	خانم، خانوم، همسر	/xanom, xanum/, /hæmsær/	n.
wife (*infml.*)	زَن	/zæn/	n.
wilderness	بیابان، بیابون	/biyaban, biyabun/	n.
window	پَنجره	/pænjere/	n.
winter	زِمِستان	/zemestan/	n.
winter coat	پالتو	/palto/	n.
with	با	/ba/	p.
woman	زَن	/zæn/	n.
women's clothes	لِباسِ زَنانه	/lebas-e zæn-ane/	n.
work	کار	/kar/	n.
work (to)	کار کَردَن	/kar kærdæn/	v.
workday	روز کاری	/ruz-e kar-i/	n.
working hours	ساعت کاری	/sa'æt-e kar-i/	n.
world	دُنیا	/donya/	n.
wound	زَخم	/zæxm/	n.
wounded	زَخمی	/zæxm-i/	adj.
wrist	مُچِ دَست	/moč-e dæst/	n.
write (to)	نوشتَن (نِویس)	/nevešt-æn/ (/nevis/)	v.

Y

yard	حَیاط	/hæyat/	n.
yeah (yes)	آره	/are/	inter.
year	سال	/sal/	n.
yellow	زَرد	/zærd/	adj.
yes	بَلِه	/bæle/	adv.
yes (to a negative question)	چِرا	/čera/	inter.
yesterday	دیروز	/di-ruz/	adv.
yogurt	ماست	/mast/	n.
yogurt drink	دوغ	/duq/	n.
you (*pl.*)	شما	/šoma/	pro.
you (*sg.*)	تو	/to/	pro.
You're welcome.	خواهِش می کُنَم.	/xaheš mi-kon-æm./	idiom
yourself	خودَت	/xod-æt/	pro.
yourself (*sg. fml.*)	خودِتان، خودتون	/xod-etan, xod-etun/	pro.
yourselves	خودِتان، خودتون	/xod-etan, xod-etun/	pro.

Z

zero	صِفر	/sefr/	num.